

TILTING MODULES AND THE p -CANONICAL BASIS

SIMON RICHE AND GEORDIE WILLIAMSON

ABSTRACT. In this paper we propose a new approach to tilting modules for reductive algebraic groups in positive characteristic. We conjecture that translation functors give an action of the (diagrammatic) Hecke category of the affine Weyl group on the principal block. Our conjecture implies character formulas for the simple and tilting modules in terms of the p -canonical basis, as well as a description of the principal block as the anti-spherical quotient of the Hecke category. We prove our conjecture for $GL_n(\mathbb{k})$ using the theory of 2-Kac-Moody actions. Finally, we prove that the diagrammatic Hecke category of a general crystallographic Coxeter group may be described in terms of parity complexes on the flag variety of the corresponding Kac-Moody group.

CONTENTS

1. Introduction	2
Part 1. General conjecture	16
2. Tilting objects and sections of the ∇ -flag	16
3. Regular and subregular blocks of reductive groups	20
4. Diagrammatic Hecke category and the antispherical module	29
5. Main conjecture and consequences	39
Part 2. The case of $GL_n(\mathbb{k})$	57
6. Representations of GL_n in characteristic p as a 2-representation of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$	59
7. Restriction of the representation to $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$	72
8. From categorical $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ -actions to \mathcal{D}_{BS} -modules	81
Part 3. Relation to parity sheaves	100
9. Parity complexes on flag varieties	100
10. Parity complexes and the Hecke category	109
11. The case of the affine flag variety	121
List of notations	130
References	134

S.R. was partially supported by ANR Grant No. ANR-13-BS01-0001-01.

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1. Overview. In this paper we give new conjectural character formulas for simple and indecomposable tilting modules for a connected reductive algebraic group in characteristic p ,¹ and we prove our conjectures in the case of the group $\mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$ when $n \geq 3$. These conjectures are formulated in terms of the p -canonical basis of the corresponding affine Hecke algebra. They should be regarded as evidence for the philosophy that Kazhdan–Lusztig polynomials should be replaced by p -Kazhdan–Lusztig polynomials in modular representation theory. From this point of view several conjectures (Lusztig’s conjecture, James’ conjecture, Andersen’s conjecture) become the question of agreement between canonical (or Kazhdan–Lusztig) and p -canonical bases.

In the general setting we prove that the new character formulas follow from a very natural conjecture of a more categorical nature, which has remarkable structural consequences for the representation theory of reductive algebraic groups. It is a classical observation that wall-crossing functors provide an action of the affine Weyl group W on the Grothendieck group of the principal block; in this way, the principal block gives a categorification of the anti-spherical module for W . We conjecture that this action can be categorified: namely, that the action of wall-crossing functors on the principal block gives rise to an action of the (diagrammatic) Hecke category attached to W as in [EW2]. From this conjecture we deduce the following properties.

- (1) The principal block is equivalent (as a module category over the Hecke category) to a categorification of the anti-spherical module defined by diagrammatic generators and relations.
- (2) The principal block admits a grading. Moreover, this graded category arises via extension of scalars from a category defined over the integers. Thus the principal block of any reductive algebraic group admits a “graded integral form”.
- (3) The (graded) characters of the simple and tilting modules are determined by the p -canonical basis in the anti-spherical module for the Hecke algebra of W .

From (1) one may describe the principal block in terms of parity sheaves on the affine flag variety, which raises the possibility of calculating simple and tilting characters topologically. Point (2) gives a strong form of “independence of p ”. Finally, point (3) implies Lusztig’s character formula for large p .

We prove this “categorical” conjecture (hence in particular the character formulas) for the groups $\mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$ using the Khovanov–Lauda–Rouquier theory of 2-Kac–Moody algebra actions. We view this, together with the agreement with Lusztig’s conjecture for large p and character formulas of Soergel and Lusztig in the context of quantum groups (see §1.7 for details) as strong evidence for our conjecture.

1.2. The “categorical” conjecture. Let G be a connected reductive algebraic group over an algebraically closed field \mathbb{k} of characteristic p with simply connected

¹This paper is written under the assumption that p is (strictly) larger than the Coxeter number, and so p cannot be too small. However there is a variant of our conjectures for any p involving singular variants of the Hecke category. In particular, it seems likely that p -Kazhdan–Lusztig polynomials give correct character formulas for tilting modules in *any* characteristic (see Conjecture 1.6). We hope to return to this subject in a future work.

derived subgroup. We assume that $p > h$, where h is the Coxeter number of G . Let $T \subset B \subset G$ be a maximal torus and a Borel subgroup in G . Denote by $\mathbf{X} := X^*(T)$ the lattice of characters of T and by $\mathbf{X}^+ \subset \mathbf{X}$ the subset of dominant weights. Consider a regular block $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ of the category of finite-dimensional algebraic G -modules, corresponding to a weight $\lambda_0 \in \mathbf{X}$ in the fundamental alcove, with its natural highest weight structure. Then if Φ is the root system of (G, T) , $W_f = N_G(T)/T$ is the corresponding Weyl group, and $W := W_f \ltimes \mathbb{Z}\Phi$ is the affine Weyl group, then the simple, standard, costandard and tilting objects in the highest weight category $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ are all parametrized by $W \bullet \lambda_0 \cap \mathbf{X}^+$. (Here “ \bullet ” denotes “ p -dilated dot action of W of \mathbf{X} ”, see §3.1.) If ${}^fW \subset W$ is the subset of elements w which are minimal in their coset $W_f w$, then there is a natural bijection

$${}^fW \xrightarrow{\sim} W \bullet \lambda_0 \cap \mathbf{X}^+$$

sending w to $w \bullet \lambda_0$. In this way we can parametrize the simple, standard, costandard and tilting objects in $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ by fW , and denote them by $\mathbb{L}(x \bullet \lambda_0)$, $\Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0)$, $\nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0)$ and $\mathbb{T}(x \bullet \lambda_0)$ respectively. In particular, on the level of Grothendieck groups we have

$$(1.1) \quad [\text{Rep}_0(G)] = \bigoplus_{x \in {}^fW} \mathbb{Z}[\nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0)].$$

Let $S \subset W$ denote the simple reflections. To any $s \in S$ one can associate a “wall-crossing” functor Ξ_s by translating to and from an s -wall of the fundamental alcove. Consider the “anti-spherical” right $\mathbb{Z}W$ -module $\text{sgn} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}W_f} \mathbb{Z}W$, where sgn denotes the sign module for the finite Weyl group W_f (viewed as a right $\mathbb{Z}W_f$ -module). This module has a basis (as a \mathbb{Z} -module) consisting of the elements $1 \otimes w$ with $w \in {}^fW$. Then we can reformulate (1.1) as an isomorphism

$$(1.2) \quad \phi: \text{sgn} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}W_f} \mathbb{Z}W \xrightarrow{\sim} [\text{Rep}_0(G)]$$

defined by $\phi(1 \otimes w) = [\nabla(w \bullet \lambda_0)]$ for $w \in {}^fW$. The advantage of this formulation over (1.1) is that ϕ becomes an isomorphism of right $\mathbb{Z}W$ -modules if we let $1 + s$ act on the right by $[\Xi_s]$ for any $s \in S$ (as follows easily from standard translation functors combinatorics).

Let \mathcal{H} be the Hecke algebra of (W, S) over $\mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]$, with standard basis $\{H_w : w \in W\}$ and Kazhdan–Lusztig basis $\{\underline{H}_w : w \in W\}$. (Our normalisation is as in [S2].) Let \mathcal{D} denote the diagrammatic Hecke category over \mathbb{k} : this is an additive monoidal \mathbb{k} -linear category introduced by B. Elias and the second author in [EW2]. This category is defined by diagrammatic generators and relations. If \mathbb{k} is a field of characteristic zero, then \mathcal{D} is equivalent to the category of Soergel bimodules for W [S6]. In the modular case (and for affine Weyl groups as here) Soergel bimodules are not expected to be well behaved; but \mathcal{D} provides a convenient replacement for these objects. (Some piece of evidence for this idea is provided by the fact that \mathcal{D} can also be described in topological terms using parity sheaves on an affine flag variety; see §1.6 below.)

The fundamental properties of \mathcal{D} , which generalize well-known properties of Soergel bimodules, are the following (see [EW2]):

- (1) \mathcal{D} is graded with shift functor $\langle 1 \rangle$;
- (2) \mathcal{D} is idempotent complete and Krull–Schmidt;
- (3) \mathcal{D} is generated as a graded monoidal category by some objects B_s for $s \in S$;

(4) we have a canonical isomorphism of $\mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]$ -algebras

$$(1.3) \quad \mathcal{H} \xrightarrow{\sim} [\mathcal{D}]: \underline{H}_s \mapsto [B_s]$$

where $[\mathcal{D}]$ denotes the split Grothendieck group of \mathcal{D} (a $\mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]$ -module via $v \cdot [M] := [M\langle 1 \rangle]$);

(5) for each $w \in W$ there exists an object $B_w \in \mathcal{D}$ (well-defined up to isomorphism) such that the map $(w, n) \mapsto B_w\langle n \rangle$ gives an identification between $W \times \mathbb{Z}$ and the isomorphism classes of indecomposable objects in \mathcal{D} .

In particular, (4) tells us that \mathcal{D} provides a categorification of \mathcal{H} . Let us note also that \mathcal{D} is defined as the Karoubi envelope of the additive hull of a category \mathcal{D}_{BS} which can be obtained by base change to \mathbb{k} from a category $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}$ defined over a ring \mathbb{Z}' which is either \mathbb{Z} or $\mathbb{Z}[\frac{1}{2}]$. (In other words, \mathcal{D}_{BS} has a natural integral form.)

The following conjecture says that the above shadow of translation functors on the Grothendieck group can be upgraded to a categorical action.

Conjecture 1.1 (Rough version). *The assignment of B_s to a wall-crossing functor Ξ_s for all $s \in S$ induces a right action of the Hecke category \mathcal{D} on $\text{Rep}_0(G)$.*

The reason that this formulation of the conjecture is only a rough statement is that we also need to define the images of certain generating morphisms in \mathcal{D} . We require that most of these morphisms arise from fixed choices of adjunctions between translation functors. See Conjecture 5.1 for a precise statement, and Remark 5.2 for comments.

1.3. Tilting modules and the anti-spherical module. We now explain the main results of the first part of this paper. In short, we prove that Conjecture 1.1 leads to an explicit description of the regular block $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ in terms of the Hecke category \mathcal{D} , which provides a character formula for tilting modules and allows us to construct graded and integral forms of $\text{Rep}_0(G)$.

Let \mathcal{H} be the Hecke algebra of W as above, and let $\mathcal{H}_f \subset \mathcal{H}$ be the Hecke algebra of W_f (i.e. the subalgebra with basis $\{H_w : w \in W_f\}$). Let

$$\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}} := \text{sgn} \otimes_{\mathcal{H}_f} \mathcal{H}$$

be the corresponding antispherical (right) \mathcal{H} -module. (Here $\text{sgn} = \mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]$, with H_s acting via multiplication by $-v$ for simple reflections s in W_f ; the module $\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$ is denoted \mathcal{N}^0 in [S2].) This module has a standard basis $\{N_w : w \in {}^fW\}$ and a Kazhdan–Lusztig basis $\{\underline{N}_w : w \in {}^fW\}$; by definition we have $N_w = 1 \otimes H_w$, and it is not difficult to check that $\underline{N}_w = 1 \otimes \underline{H}_w$. The anti-spherical \mathcal{H} -module $\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$ is a quantization of the anti-spherical $\mathbb{Z}W$ -module considered in §1.2 in the sense that the specialization $v \mapsto 1$ gives a canonical isomorphism

$$\mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]} \mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}} \cong \text{sgn} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}W_f} \mathbb{Z}W.$$

Now define $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ as the quotient of \mathcal{D} by the morphisms which factor through a sum of indecomposable objects of the form $B_w\langle n \rangle$ with $w \notin {}^fW$. Then $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ is naturally a right \mathcal{D} -module category and we have a canonical isomorphism of right \mathcal{H} -modules

$$(1.4) \quad \mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}} \xrightarrow{\sim} [\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}].$$

In particular, $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ provides a categorification of $\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$.

The categorified anti-spherical module $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ has the following properties:

- (1) $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ is a graded category (with shift functor $\langle 1 \rangle$) and its indecomposable objects (up to isomorphism) are the images $\overline{B}_w \langle n \rangle$ of the objects $B_w \langle n \rangle$ for $w \in {}^f W$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$;
- (2) $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ may be obtained as the Karoubi envelope of a right $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}$ -module category defined over \mathbb{Z}' (at least after inverting some explicit prime numbers in \mathbb{Z}').

Let us denote by $\mathcal{D}_{\text{deg}}^{\text{asph}}$ the “degrading” of $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$, i.e. the category with the same objects as $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ but with morphisms given by

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{deg}}^{\text{asph}}}(M, N) := \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}(M, N \langle n \rangle).$$

The map on Grothendieck groups induced by the obvious functor $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}_{\text{deg}}^{\text{asph}}$ is the specialization $v \mapsto 1$.

Let $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ denote the additive category of tilting modules in $\text{Rep}_0(G)$. Because translation functors preserve tilting modules, the wall-crossing functors preserve $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$; hence if Conjecture 1.1 holds (or in fact its more precise formulation in Conjecture 5.1) then the Hecke category \mathcal{D} acts on $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$.

Our first main result is the following.

Theorem 1.2. *Suppose that Conjecture 5.1 holds. Then we have an equivalence of additive right \mathcal{D} -module categories*

$$\mathcal{D}_{\text{deg}}^{\text{asph}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$$

which sends \overline{B}_w to $[\mathbb{T}(w \bullet \lambda_0)]$ for any $w \in {}^f W$.

In rough terms, this result says that once we have the action of \mathcal{D} , we automatically know that $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ “is” the (categorified) antispherical module. Or in other words, we can upgrade the isomorphism between Grothendieck groups deduced from (1.2) and (1.4) to an equivalence of categories.

In view of the above properties of $\mathcal{D}_{\text{deg}}^{\text{asph}}$, the following corollary is immediate.

Corollary 1.3 (See Theorem 5.20). *Suppose that Conjecture 5.1 holds. Then $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ admits $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ as a graded enhancement. Moreover, this graded enhancement may be obtained as the Karoubi envelope of the additive hull of a graded $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}$ -module category coming via base change from a $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}$ -module category defined over \mathbb{Z}' .*

Because tilting modules have no higher extensions and generate $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ the inclusion functor gives an equivalence of triangulated categories:²

$$K^b(\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))) \xrightarrow{\sim} D^b(\text{Rep}_0(G)).$$

The results above tell us that $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ has a graded \mathbb{Z}' -form, and hence so does $K^b(\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G)))$. After inverting all prime numbers below the Coxeter number we show (see Theorems 5.15 and 5.33 below) that the t-structure defining $\text{Rep}_0(G) \subset D^b(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ may be lifted to the graded integral form of $K^b(\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G)))$. Hence (under the assumption of our conjecture) there exists a graded abelian category from which $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ is obtained by extension of scalars and “degrading” for any field \mathbb{k} of characteristic larger than h . This gives a strong form of the “independence of p ” property of [AJŠ].

²Indeed, it is from this property that tilting modules derive their name.

1.4. Tilting characters. The preceding theorem giving a description of the category $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ has a “combinatorial shadow”, namely a character formula for tilting modules. First, recall that the p -canonical basis $\{^p\underline{H}_w : w \in W\}$ of \mathcal{H} is defined as the inverse image under (1.3) of the basis of $[\mathcal{D}]$ consisting of the classes of the objects $\{B_w : w \in W\}$. This basis has many favorable properties similar to the usual Kazhdan–Lusztig basis $\{\underline{H}_w : w \in W\}$ of \mathcal{H} , see [JW]. In particular, it can be computed algorithmically, though this algorithm is much more complicated than the algorithm for computing the usual Kazhdan–Lusztig basis. (Note that our category \mathcal{D} does not coincide with the category used to define the p -canonical basis in [JW]; however the two choices lead to the same basis of \mathcal{H} ; see Remark 11.4 for details.)

Similarly, the p -canonical basis $\{^p\underline{N}_w : w \in {}^fW\}$ of $\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$ can be defined as the inverse image under (1.4) of the basis of $[\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}]$ consisting of the classes of the objects \overline{B}_w . By construction, for any $w \in {}^fW$ we have

$$^p\underline{N}_w = 1 \otimes ^p\underline{H}_w.$$

In particular, this basis is easy to compute if we know the p -canonical basis of \mathcal{H} . We can then define the *antispherical p -Kazhdan–Lusztig polynomials* $^pn_{w,y}$ (for $w, y \in {}^fW$) via the formula

$$^p\underline{N}_w = \sum_{y \in {}^fW} ^pn_{y,w} \underline{N}_y.$$

As an immediate corollary of Theorem 1.2 we obtain the following result.

Corollary 1.4. *Assume that Conjecture 5.1 holds. Then for any $w \in {}^fW$ the isomorphism ϕ of (1.2) satisfies*

$$(1.5) \quad \phi^{-1}([\mathbb{T}(w \bullet \lambda_0)]) = 1 \otimes ^p\underline{N}_w.$$

In other words, for any $w, y \in {}^fW$ we have

$$(1.6) \quad (\mathbb{T}(w \bullet \lambda_0) : \nabla(y \bullet \lambda_0)) = ^pn_{y,w}(1).$$

Note that the characters of the costandard modules are known, and given by the Weyl character formula. Hence the formula (1.6) for multiplicities provides a character formula for tilting modules; this is the conjectural character formula for tilting modules referred to in §1.1. Of course, there already exists a conjecture, due to Andersen, for the multiplicities of indecomposable tilting modules whose weights lie in the lowest p^2 -alcove; see [A1]. Recall that $\{\underline{N}_w : w \in {}^fW\}$ is the Kazhdan–Lusztig basis of $\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$. Then Andersen’s conjecture can be expressed as follows:

$$(1.7) \quad \text{if } w \in {}^fW \text{ and } \forall \alpha \in \Phi^+, \langle w \bullet \lambda_0, \alpha^\vee \rangle < p^2, \text{ then } \phi^{-1}([\mathbb{T}(w \bullet \lambda_0)]) = 1 \otimes \underline{N}_w.$$

(Here $\Phi^+ \subset \Phi$ denotes the set of positive roots.) It is known that if $p \geq 2h - 2$ and if this conjecture is true over \mathbb{k} , then Lusztig’s conjecture [L1] holds over \mathbb{k} ; see §1.8 below for details. Hence the counterexamples to the expected bound in Lusztig’s conjecture found by the second author [Wi] show that this conjecture does not hold, except perhaps if p is very large.

There are two important differences between the multiplicity formula (1.5) and Andersen’s conjecture (1.7). The first one is that the Kazhdan–Lusztig basis has been replaced by the p -canonical basis. The second one is that our formula applies

to *all* tilting modules in the principal block, and not only to those in the lowest p^2 -alcove.

Remark 1.5. (1) Andersen's conjecture is only concerned with weights in the lowest p^2 -alcove. There exists a “tensor product theorem” for tilting modules, but with assumptions which are different from the assumptions of Steinberg's tensor product theorem for simple modules. In particular, whereas one can obtain the characters of *all* simple modules if one knows the characters of restricted simple modules, one *cannot* deduce from Andersen's formula character formulas for all indecomposable tilting modules in $\text{Rep}_0(G)$, not even when p is large; see [LW] for an investigation of which characters can be obtained in this way.

- (2) It is a basic property of the p -canonical basis that for fixed $w \in {}^fW$ we have ${}^pN_w = N_w$ for large p . However, this observation alone does not imply Andersen's conjecture for large p as the set

$$\{w \in {}^fW \mid w \bullet \lambda_0 \text{ lies in the lowest } p^2\text{-alcove}\}$$

grows with p . Hence as p grows we would need the equality ${}^pN_w = N_w$ for an increasing number of elements w . Therefore, even for large p , Andersen's conjecture would imply a highly non-trivial stability property of the p -canonical basis. (Note that in the setting of affine Weyl groups it is known that there is no p such that ${}^pH_w = H_w$ for all $w \in W$.)

- (3) Conjecture 1.1 provides a very direct way to obtain the multiplicity formula (1.5). However this conjecture might be difficult to prove in general (see in particular Remark 1.9 below), and there might be other, more indirect, ways to prove this formula. A first step in this direction is obtained by P. Achar and the first author in [AR4].

Corollary 1.4 (contingent on our Conjecture 1.1) has a reformulation which makes sense for any p and which we would like to state as a conjecture. So let us temporarily allow p to be arbitrary. Fix a weight $\lambda_0 \in \mathbf{X}$ in the fundamental alcove. (Note that λ_0 will be neither regular nor dominant in general.) Let $I \subset S$ be such that W_I is the stabiliser of λ_0 under the action $\lambda_0 \mapsto w \bullet \lambda_0$ of W . We have a bijection

$${}^fW^I \xrightarrow{\sim} W \bullet \lambda_0 \cap \mathbf{X}^+$$

where ${}^fW^I$ denotes the subset of elements $w \in W$ which both belong to fW and are maximal in their coset wW_I . The bijection is given by $w \mapsto w \bullet \lambda_0$.

Conjecture 1.6. *For any $w, y \in {}^fW^I$ we have*

$$(1.8) \quad (\mathbb{T}(w \bullet \lambda_0) : \nabla(y \bullet \lambda_0)) = p n_{y,w}(1).$$

Remark 1.7. In the case when regular weights exist (i.e. when $p \geq h$), the general case of Conjecture 1.6 follows from the case when λ_0 is regular (in which case it coincides with (1.6)) using [A2, Proposition 5.2].

1.5. The case of the group $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$. In the second part of the paper we restrict to the case $G = \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$ (in which case $h = n$), and λ_0 is the weight (n, \dots, n) (under the standard identification $\mathbf{X} = \mathbb{Z}^n$).

The main result of this part, proved in §8.1, is the following.

Theorem 1.8. *Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 3}$. If $G = \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$ and $\lambda_0 = (n, \dots, n)$, then Conjecture 5.1 holds.*

Our proof of this result uses in a crucial way the Khovanov–Lauda–Rouquier 2-category $\mathcal{U}(\mathfrak{h})$ associated with a Kac–Moody Lie algebra \mathfrak{h} . In a sense, to check the relations between wall-crossing functors we decompose them in terms of “simpler” functors appearing in the KLR 2-category, and use the known relations between these “simpler functors” to prove the desired relations. More precisely, our proof of Theorem 1.8 consists of 3 steps:

- (1) define an action of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ on the category $\text{Rep}(G)$ of finite dimensional algebraic G -modules;
- (2) show that one can restrict this action to an action of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$;
- (3) show that the categorical action of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ induces an action of \mathcal{D}_{BS} on an appropriate weight space equal to $\text{Rep}_0(G)$.

Each of these steps is known: (1) is due to Chuang–Rouquier [CR], (2) follows from a result of Maksimau [Ma], and (3) follows from results of Mackaay–Stošić–Vaz and Mackaay–Thiel, see [MSV, MT1, MT2]. However, as these authors do not all use the same conventions, and for the benefit of readers not used to the KLR formalism (like the authors), we give a detailed account of each step. (Our proof of step (3) is slightly different from the proof in [MSV, MT1, MT2], which does not use our step (2).) We also make an essential use of a recent result of Brundan [Br] proving that the 2-categories defined by Khovanov–Lauda and by Rouquier are equivalent.

In particular, this theorem implies that the character formula (1.5) is proved for the group $G = \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$ when $p > n \geq 3$. This case is especially interesting because, due to work of Donkin [Do], Erdmann [Er] and Mathieu [M2], the knowledge of characters of indecomposable tilting modules for all groups $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$ provides (in theory) a dimension formula for the irreducible representations of all the symmetric groups S_m over \mathbb{k} . To use this idea in practice we would need a character formula valid for *all* characteristics, not only when $p > n$. But our formula might still have interesting applications in this direction (which we have not investigated yet).

Remark 1.9. (1) Theorem 1.8 is also trivially true in case $n = 1$. The case $n = 2$ can be proved by methods similar to those we use in Part 2. However, since the extended Dynkin diagram looks differently in this case, some arguments have to be modified, and for simplicity we decided to exclude this case. (In fact, in this case there are only “one color relations”, so that one only needs to adapt the considerations of §8.3.) In any case, the tilting modules for the group $\text{GL}_2(\mathbb{k})$ are essentially the same as for $\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{k})$, and in the latter case they are well understood thanks to work of Donkin [Do].

(2) From the above discussion it should be clear that the extra structure provided by the categorical Kac–Moody action on $\text{Rep}(\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k}))$ is absolutely central to our proof in this case. There has been recent work by several authors on possible replacements for Kac–Moody actions in other classical types; however it is unclear whether these works will open the way to a proof of our conjecture in these cases similar to our proof for $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$. In exceptional types it seems that genuinely new ideas will be needed.

1.6. The Hecke category and parity sheaves. As explained above, in this paper a central role is played by the Hecke category \mathcal{D} , viewed as a monoidal category defined by certain diagrammatic generators and relations. In the third part of the paper we show that \mathcal{D} is equivalent to the “geometric” (or “topological”) Hecke category, i.e. the additive category of Iwahori-equivariant parity sheaves on the

Langlands dual affine flag variety. This provides an alternative and more intrinsic description of \mathcal{D} , and also allows us (under the assumption that Conjecture 5.1 holds) to relate $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ to parity sheaves.

In fact, in view of other expected applications, we consider more generally the diagrammatic Hecke category $\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$ associated with the Weyl group W of a Kac–Moody group \mathcal{G} , with coefficients in a Noetherian (commutative) complete local ring \mathbb{K} (assuming that 2 is invertible in \mathbb{K} in some cases, see §10.1). We denote by $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{G}$ the Borel subgroup, and by $\mathcal{X} := \mathcal{G}/\mathcal{B}$ the associated flag variety. Then we can consider the category $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ of \mathcal{B} -equivariant parity complexes on \mathcal{X} with coefficients in \mathbb{K} (in the sense of [JMW]). This category is a full subcategory in the \mathcal{B} -equivariant derived category $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ which is closed under the convolution product $\star^{\mathcal{B}}$ and is graded, with shift functor $[1]$.

The main result of the third part of the paper is the following.

Theorem 1.10. *There exists an equivalence of monoidal graded additive categories*

$$\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}).$$

Coming back to the setting of §1.2, we can define G^{\wedge} as the simply connected cover of the derived subgroup of the complex reductive group which is Langlands dual to G , and consider an Iwahori subgroup $I^{\wedge} \subset G^{\wedge}(\mathbb{C}[[z]])$ and the associated affine flag variety $\mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge} := G^{\wedge}(\mathbb{C}((z)))/I^{\wedge}$. Then we have a monoidal category $\text{Parity}_{I^{\wedge}}(\mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge}, \mathbb{k})$ of parity complexes on \mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge} with coefficients in \mathbb{k} . From Theorem 1.10 we deduce a “topological” description of the category \mathcal{D} of §1.2, in the form of an equivalence of monoidal additive graded categories

$$\mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Parity}_{I^{\wedge}}(\mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge}, \mathbb{k}).$$

One can also deduce a topological description of $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ in terms of Iwahori–Whittaker (étale) sheaves on \mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge} (or rather a version of \mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge} over an algebraically closed field of positive characteristic different from p); see Theorem 11.13 for details.

Remark 1.11. As explained above, if Conjecture 5.1 holds, combining Theorem 1.2 with the above “topological” description of $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ one obtains a description of $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ in terms of constructible sheaves on \mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge} . This relation is *not* the same as the relation conjectured by Finkelberg–Mirković in [FM]; in fact it is Koszul dual (see [AR4] for details).

1.7. Variants. Although we will not treat this in detail, methods similar to those of this paper apply in the following contexts:

- (1) regular block of category \mathcal{O} of a reductive complex Lie algebra;
- (2) regular block of the category of finite-dimensional representations of Lusztig’s quantum groups at a root of unity;
- (3) Soergel’s modular category \mathcal{O} .

(In cases (1) and (3) one needs to replace the affine Weyl group W by W_{f} , the antispherical module $\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$ by the regular right module \mathcal{H}_{f} , and the affine flag variety by the finite flag variety; in cases (1) and (2) one needs to replace \mathbb{k} by the appropriate field of characteristic 0.)

In each case one can formulate an analogue of our Conjecture 5.1 and show that this conjecture implies a description of the category of tilting objects as in Theorem 1.2, and a character formula for these tilting objects as in Corollary 1.4. In

case (1) one can show (using a Radon transform as in [BBM], or an algebraic analogue) that this formula is equivalent to the Kazhdan–Lusztig conjecture proved by Beilinson–Bernstein and Brylinski–Kashiwara. In case (2) this formula is Soergel’s conjecture [S2] proved by Soergel [S3], which implies in particular Lusztig’s conjecture on characters of simple representations of quantum groups at a root of unity [L2], see §1.9 below. And in case (3) these statements are equivalent to the main results of [S4].

In cases (1) and (2), the appropriate variant of our results for the group $G = \mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$ also apply. (In case (1) one uses the action of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_\infty)$ on the category \mathcal{O} constructed in [CR]. In case (2) one uses an action of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_\ell$ where ℓ is the order of the root of unity under consideration, assuming that $\ell > n$; the existence of such an action is suggested in [CR, Remark 7.27].) Combining these approaches with the main result of [EW1], in this way one can obtain direct algebraic proofs of the Kazhdan–Lusztig conjecture and of Lusztig’s and Soergel’s quantum conjectures in type \mathbf{A} , which bypass geometry completely (and even use few results from Representation Theory).

In case (3) the similar approach does not apply (because we cannot embed the category in a larger category as in the other cases). However, since we have checked the appropriate relations on $\mathrm{Rep}(G)$, and since the translation functors in Soergel’s modular category \mathcal{O} are obtained from the translation functors on $\mathrm{Rep}(G)$ by restricting to a subcategory and then taking the induced functors on the quotient, from the relations on $\mathrm{Rep}(G)$ one can deduce the relations on the modular category \mathcal{O} . In this way one gets an alternative proof of the main result of [S4], which does not rely on any result from [AJS] (contrary to Soergel’s proof). Note that these results are the main ingredient in the second author’s construction of counterexamples to the expected bound in Lusztig’s conjecture in [Wi].

Remark 1.12. Case (2) above has recently been considered by Andersen–Tubbenhauer [AT]. In particular, they have obtained by more explicit methods a diagrammatic description of the principal block in type \mathbf{A}_1 which is similar to the one that can be deduced from our methods.

1.8. Simple characters. We conclude this introduction with some comments on another motivation for the current work, which is to establish a formula for the simple characters in $\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)$ in terms of p -Kazhdan–Lusztig polynomials.

The question of computing the characters of simple modules has a long history. For a fixed characteristic p , Steinberg’s tensor product theorem reduces this question to the calculation of the characters of the (finitely many) simple modules with restricted highest weight. As long as $p \geq h$, classical results of Jantzen and Andersen reduce this question further to the calculation of simple characters corresponding to restricted highest weights in a regular block (a finite set which is independent of $p \geq h$). As for tilting modules (see §1.4), it is then natural to seek an expression (in the Grothendieck group of such a regular block) for the classes of simple modules in terms of costandard dual Weyl modules, since the characters of the latter modules are known.

In 1979, Lusztig [L1] gave a conjectural expression for this decomposition in terms of affine Kazhdan–Lusztig polynomials. This conjecture was then proved in 1994/95, combining works of Andersen–Jantzen–Soergel [AJS], Kashiwara–Tanisaki [KT], Kazhdan–Lusztig [KL] and Lusztig [L3], but only under the assumption that p is bigger than a non-explicit bound depending on the root system of G .

More recently Fiebig [F2] obtained an explicit bound above which the conjecture holds. However this bound is difficult to compute and in any case several orders of magnitude bigger than h .

On the other hand, the second author [Wi] has recently exhibited examples showing that Lusztig's conjecture *cannot* hold for all $p \geq h$. In fact these examples show that there does not exist any polynomial $P \in \mathbb{Z}[X]$ such that Lusztig's conjecture holds for the group $G = \mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$ in all characteristics $p > P(n)$.³ On the other hand, in this case the Coxeter number h is equal to n .

Following a strategy due to Andersen, we can use a small part of the information on tilting characters above to deduce character formulas for simple modules. Let us assume that $p \geq 2h - 2$. We denote by ρ the half sum of positive roots, by α_0^\vee the highest coroot of G , and we set

$${}^fW_0 := \{w \in {}^fW \mid \langle w \bullet \lambda_0, \alpha_0^\vee \rangle < p(h-1)\}.$$

(This subset of fW does not depend on the choice of λ_0 , nor on p .) Then following Soergel [S2] we define a map

$$(1.9) \quad {}^fW \rightarrow {}^fW : y \mapsto \hat{y}$$

as follows. Let Σ be the set of simple roots, and let

$$\mathbf{X}_1^+ := \{\lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+ \mid \forall \alpha \in \Sigma, \langle \lambda, \alpha^\vee \rangle \leq p-1\}$$

be the set of restricted weights. Then, for $\lambda \in (p-1)\rho + \mathbf{X}^+$, we set $\tilde{\lambda} = (p-1)\rho + p\gamma + w_0\eta$ where $\gamma \in \mathbf{X}^+$ and $\eta \in \mathbf{X}_1^+$ are characterized by the fact that $\lambda = (p-1)\rho + p\gamma + \eta$. This map induces a bijection $(p-1)\rho + \mathbf{X}^+ \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{X}^+$, and we denote its inverse by $\mu \mapsto \hat{\mu}$. Then the map (1.9) is characterized by the fact that $\widehat{y \bullet \lambda_0} = \hat{y} \bullet \lambda_0$.

Proposition 1.13. *For any $x, y \in {}^fW_0$ we have*

$$[\Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0) : \mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda_0)] = (\mathbb{T}(\hat{y} \bullet \lambda_0) : \nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0)).$$

*Proof.*⁴ Let us consider

$$\mathbf{X}_{<p(h-1)}^+ := \{\lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+ \mid \langle \lambda + \rho, \alpha_0^\vee \rangle < p(h-1)\},$$

and denote by $\mathrm{Rep}_{<p(h-1)}(G)$ the Serre subcategory of $\mathrm{Rep}(G)$ generated by the simple objects $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$ with $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}_{<p(h-1)}^+$. Since $\mathbf{X}_{<p(h-1)}^+$ is an ideal in (\mathbf{X}^+, \uparrow) , $\mathrm{Rep}_{<p(h-1)}(G)$ has a natural highest weight structure, see Lemma 2.3(1). We define in a similar way the subcategory $\mathrm{Rep}_{<2p(h-1)}(G)$.

Let us denote by

$$\Pi_{<p(h-1)} : \mathrm{Rep}(G) \rightarrow \mathrm{Rep}_{<p(h-1)}(G)$$

the functor which sends an object to its largest subobject which belongs to the subcategory $\mathrm{Rep}_{<p(h-1)}(G)$. This functor is right adjoint to the inclusion functor $\mathrm{Rep}_{<p(h-1)}(G) \rightarrow \mathrm{Rep}(G)$. To prove the proposition it suffices to prove that

³More precisely, to prove this statement one also needs some non-trivial results from number theory, see the appendix to [Wi].

⁴This proof has benefitted from discussions with H. H. Andersen.

for $y \in {}^f W_0$, the object $\Pi_{<p(h-1)}(\mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0))$ is the injective hull of $\mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda_0)$ in $\text{Rep}_{<p(h-1)}(G)$. Indeed, if this is known then we obtain that

$$\begin{aligned} [\Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0), \mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda_0)] &= \dim_{\mathbb{k}} \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_{<p(h-1)}(G)}(\Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0), \Pi_{<p(h-1)}(\mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0))) \\ &= \dim_{\mathbb{k}} \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}(G)}(\Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0), \mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0)) = (\mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0) : \nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0)). \end{aligned}$$

So, what remains is to prove that $\Pi_{<p(h-1)}(\mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0))$ is the injective hull of $\mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda_0)$ in $\text{Rep}_{<p(h-1)}(G)$. Let $\mu = y \bullet \lambda_0$, and write $\mu = \mu^0 + p\mu^1$ with $\mu^0 \in \mathbf{X}_1^+$ and $\mu^1 \in \mathbf{X}^+$. Then $\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0 = \widehat{\mu}^0 + p\mu^1$. Moreover, the fact that $y \in {}^f W_0$ implies that $p\langle \mu^1, \alpha_0^\vee \rangle < p(h-1)$, hence that $\langle \mu^1, \alpha_0^\vee \rangle < (h-1)$. Since $p \geq h$, this shows that μ^1 belongs to the fundamental alcove, hence that

$$\Delta(\mu^1) = \nabla(\mu^1) = \mathbb{L}(\mu^1) = \mathbb{T}(\mu^1).$$

Now by Donkin's tensor product theorem (see [Ja, §E.9]), under our assumption that $p \geq 2h-2$ we have $\mathbb{T}(\widehat{\mu}^0 + p\mu^1) = \mathbb{T}(\widehat{\mu}^0) \otimes \mathbb{T}(\mu^1)^{[1]}$, where $(-)^{[1]}$ is the Frobenius twist, see [Ja, §II.3.16]. We deduce that

$$(1.10) \quad \mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0) \cong \mathbb{T}(\widehat{\mu}^0) \otimes \mathbb{L}(\mu^1)^{[1]}.$$

Now, by work of Jantzen and Donkin it is known that $\mathbb{T}(\widehat{\mu}^0)$ is the injective hull of $\mathbb{L}(\mu^0)$ in $\text{Rep}_{<2p(h-1)}(G)$, and that moreover its socle as a G_1 -module is $\mathbb{L}(\mu^0)$, see [Do, §2], [A1, Proposition 2.6 and its proof] or [Ja, §E.10]. Since $\mathbb{L}(\mu^0) \otimes \mathbb{L}(\mu^1)^{[1]} \cong \mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda_0)$ by Steinberg's tensor product theorem, using (1.10) and [AK, Lemma 4.6] we obtain that the socle of $\mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0)$ is $\mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda_0)$. A fortiori, the socle of $\Pi_{<p(h-1)}(\mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0))$ is $\mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda_0)$.

Now if $x \in {}^f W^0$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ext}_{\text{Rep}(G)}^1(\mathbb{L}(x \bullet \lambda_0), \mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0)) &\stackrel{(1.10)}{=} \text{Ext}_{\text{Rep}(G)}^1(\mathbb{L}(x \bullet \lambda_0), \mathbb{T}(\widehat{\mu}^0) \otimes \mathbb{L}(\mu^1)^{[1]}) \\ &\cong \text{Ext}_{\text{Rep}(G)}^1(\mathbb{L}(x \bullet \lambda_0) \otimes \mathbb{L}(-w_0\mu^1)^{[1]}, \mathbb{T}(\widehat{\mu}^0)), \end{aligned}$$

where w_0 is the longest element in W_f . We have

$$\langle x \bullet \lambda_0 - pw_0\mu^1, \alpha_0^\vee \rangle < p(h-1) + p(h-1) = 2p(h-1)$$

since $\langle \mu^1, \alpha_0^\vee \rangle < (h-1)$. Hence any composition factor of $\mathbb{L}(x \bullet \lambda_0) \otimes \mathbb{L}(-w_0\mu^1)^{[1]}$ belongs to $\text{Rep}_{<2p(h-1)}(G)$, which implies that

$$\text{Ext}_{\text{Rep}(G)}^1(\mathbb{L}(x \bullet \lambda_0), \mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0)) = 0.$$

From this vanishing it is not difficult to deduce that $\Pi_{<p(h-1)}(\mathbb{T}(\widehat{y} \bullet \lambda_0))$ is injective in $\text{Rep}_{<p(h-1)}(G)$, which finishes the proof. \square

From (1.6) and Proposition 1.13 it follows that if Conjecture 5.1 holds then

$$(1.11) \quad [\Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0)] = \sum_{y \in {}^f W_0} {}^p n_{x, \widehat{y}}(1) \cdot [\mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda_0)]$$

in $[\text{Rep}_0(G)]$. Inverting the matrix $({}^p n_{x, \widehat{y}}(1))_{x, y \in {}^f W_0}$ (which is upper-triangular with 1's on the diagonal for an appropriate order) we can express the classes of the modules $\mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda_0)$ for $y \in {}^f W_0$ in terms of standard modules, hence deduce their characters. Since these modules include the simple modules $\mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda_0)$ with $y \bullet \lambda_0 \in \mathbf{X}_1^+$, this solves the problem of computing the characters of simple modules in $\text{Rep}(G)$ (under the assumption that Conjecture 5.1 holds, or at least that (1.6) holds).

Remark 1.14. As explained in [A1, Remark 2.7(ii)] and [Ja, §E.10], there is another way to obtain a character formula for $\mathbb{L}(y)$ out of a tilting character formula, this time in terms of baby Verma modules for the Lie algebra of G (again under the assumption that $p \geq 2h - 2$). In the context of Lusztig's conjecture, the relation between the two formulas one can obtain in this way is explained in [F1, §3.3].

1.9. Comparison with Lusztig's conjecture. To explain the relation between the formula for characters of simple modules obtained in §1.8 and Lusztig's conjecture [L1], we first consider the characteristic 0 situation, which corresponds to representations of Lusztig's quantum groups at a p -th root of unity (see §1.7). (The relation between character formulas for tilting and simple modules in this case is investigated by Soergel in [S2, p.106–107], and we essentially copy Soergel's discussion.) We denote by $\Delta_q(\lambda)$, $\mathbb{L}_q(\lambda)$, etc. the analogues of $\Delta(\lambda)$, $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$, etc. in this context.

Consider the ordinary Kazhdan–Lusztig basis $\{\underline{N}_w : w \in {}^f W\}$ of $\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$ and the corresponding Kazhdan–Lusztig polynomials $\{n_{y,w} : y, w \in {}^f W\}$. Then, due to work of Andersen, we have

$$[\Delta_q(x \bullet \lambda_0) : \mathbb{L}_q(y \bullet \lambda_0)] = (\mathbb{T}_q(\hat{y} \bullet \lambda_0) : \nabla_q(x \bullet \lambda_0))$$

for all $x, y \in {}^f W$. This implies in particular that the right-hand side vanishes unless $y \bullet \lambda_0 \leq x \bullet \lambda_0$ for the standard order on dominant weights, hence that from Soergel's character formula for the tilting modules $\mathbb{T}_q(w \bullet \lambda_0)$ one deduces that

$$(1.12) \quad [\Delta_q(x \bullet \lambda_0)] = \sum_{y \in {}^f W} n_{x,\hat{y}}(1) \cdot [\mathbb{L}_q(y \bullet \lambda_0)],$$

where now the sum runs over all $y \in {}^f W$. Introducing the inverse Kazhdan–Lusztig polynomials $\{n^{y,w} : y, w \in {}^f W\}$ as in [S2], from (1.12) one can deduce the formula

$$[\mathbb{L}_q(y)] = \sum_{x \in {}^f W} (-1)^{\ell(x) + \ell(\hat{y})} \cdot n^{x,\hat{y}}(1) \cdot [\Delta_q(x)].$$

Consider now the *spherical* (right) \mathcal{H} -module

$$\mathcal{M}^{\text{sph}} := \text{triv} \otimes_{\mathcal{H}_f} \mathcal{H},$$

where triv is the “trivial” \mathcal{H}_f -module, i.e. the free rank one $\mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]$ -module on which H_s acts by multiplication by v^{-1} . Let $\{\underline{M}_w : w \in {}^f W\}$ be the corresponding Kazhdan–Lusztig basis and $\{m_{y,w} : y, w \in {}^f W\}$ be the corresponding Kazhdan–Lusztig polynomials, see [S2]. Then [S2, Theorem 5.1] implies that

$$(1.13) \quad n^{x,\hat{y}}(1) = (-1)^{\ell(y) + \ell(\hat{y})} m_{x,y}(1).$$

Hence, in this setting, from (1.12) one obtains the character formula

$$[\mathbb{L}_q(y)] = \sum_{x \in {}^f W} (-1)^{\ell(x) + \ell(y)} \cdot m_{x,y}(1) \cdot [\Delta_q(x)],$$

which is exactly the formula conjectured by Lusztig and proved by the combination of works of Kazhdan–Lusztig [KL], Lusztig [L3] and Kashiwara–Tanisaki [KT].

If one wants to generalize this analysis to the modular setting, the first difficulty is that we do not know whether one can replace ${}^f W_0$ by ${}^f W$ in the sum in (1.11). The second difficulty is that we do not have an analogue of [S2, Theorem 5.1] for p -canonical bases. (Note that one can define the p -canonical basis of \mathcal{M}^{sph} as follows. Consider the injective morphism ζ of [S2, Proof of Proposition 3.4]. Then using [JW, Lemma 4.3] it is not difficult to check that, for $w \in {}^f W$, the element ${}^p \underline{H}_{w_0 w}$ belongs

to the image of ζ ; then we can define ${}^p\mathcal{M}_w$ by the property that $\zeta({}^p\mathcal{M}_w) = {}^p\mathcal{H}_{w_0w}$. One can also define the “dual” basis of $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]}(\mathcal{M}^{\mathrm{sp}}, \mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}])$ as in [S2], so that one can at least make sense of the p -analogues of all the ingredients in [S2, Theorem 5.1].)

But in any case one shouldn’t expect to express the classes $[\mathbb{L}(y \bullet \lambda)]$ in terms of the classes $[\Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0)]$ using the polynomials ${}^pm_{x,y}$. In fact, recall that the polynomials $m_{x,y}$ encode the dimensions of cohomology groups of stalks of Iwahori-constructible simple \mathbb{Q} -perverse sheaves on the affine Grassmannian

$$\mathcal{G}r = G^\wedge(\mathbb{C}((t)))/G^\wedge(\mathbb{C}[[t]]),$$

where G^\wedge is as in §1.6. With this in mind, Lusztig’s character formula can be interpreted as the “combinatorial shadow” of the quantum analogue of the Finkelberg–Mirković conjecture [FM] which relates $\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)$ to perverse sheaves on $\mathcal{G}r$. (This quantum version was proved by Arkhipov–Bezrukavnikov–Ginzburg [ABG].)

In the modular case, it can be easily deduced from the results presented in §1.6 that the polynomials ${}^pm_{x,y}$ encode the dimensions of cohomology groups of stalks of Iwahori-constructible *parity sheaves* on $\mathcal{G}r$. On the other hand, according to the Finkelberg–Mirković conjecture [FM], the principal block $\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)$ should be equivalent, as a highest weight category, to the category of Iwahori-constructible \mathbb{k} -perverse sheaves on $\mathcal{G}r$. If this conjecture is true, then one would be able to express the classes of simple modules $\mathbb{L}(x \bullet \lambda_0)$ in terms of standard modules $\Delta(y \bullet \lambda_0)$ with coefficients given (up to sign) by the Euler characteristic of the stalk at the point corresponding to y of the simple perverse sheaf corresponding to x . Now parity sheaves and simple perverse sheaves on $\mathcal{G}r$ do not coincide, so the coefficient considered above will *not* be equal to ${}^pm_{x,y}(1)$.

1.10. Acknowledgements. We thank Henning Haahr Andersen, Ben Elias, Thorger Jensen, Nicolas Libedinsky, Daniel Tubbenhauer and Ben Webster for useful discussions on the subject of this paper. We would also like to thank Jon Brundan for not only admitting the existence of [Br] but also sending a preliminary version, and Henning Haahr Andersen, Jens Carsten Jantzen and Weiqiang Wang for helpful remarks on preliminary versions of this paper.

After we started working on this project, we were informed by Ivan Losev that Ben Elias and he have obtained results similar to ours in type **A**, and a generalization in a different direction. Their approach is different, and uses deeper results in the theory of categorical actions of Kac–Moody Lie algebras (in particular, “unicity of categorification” results). As far as we understand, it does not make sense (at least at this point) for other types. We thank Ivan Losev for keeping us informed of their work.

The crucial idea that a presentation of the category of Soergel bimodules should help defining actions and equivalences of categories, in particular in the context of modular representations of reductive groups and quantum groups, comes from discussions of the second author with Raphaël Rouquier. This paper also owes a debt to the ideas of Roman Bezrukavnikov and his collaborators, in particular to [AB] (where categorifications of the antispherical module also play a crucial role).

1.11. Organization of the paper. The paper is divided into 3 parts. In Part 1 we study our main conjecture on the categorical action of $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}$ on $\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)$ (for a general reductive group G as above) and study its consequences presented in §1.3. In Part 2 we restrict to the special case $G = \mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$, and prove our main conjecture

in this case using the Khovanov–Lauda–Rouquier theory of categorical Lie algebra actions. Finally, in Part 3 we prove an equivalence of monoidal categories between the diagrammatic Hecke category attached to a Kac–Moody group and the category of parity sheaves on the corresponding flag variety, and deduce a topological description of the categories \mathcal{D} and $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$.

We begin each part with a more detailed overview of its contents.

Part 1. General conjecture

Overview. This part is concerned with the study of our main conjecture and its consequences, in the context of a general reductive group with simply connected derived subgroup. In Section 2 we recall the basic notions related to tilting objects in highest weight categories and introduce the concept of a “section of the ∇ -flag”, which will play a key technical role in our approach. In Section 3 we concentrate on the case of regular blocks of representations of reductive groups; our main result is the technical Proposition 3.10 which describe how morphisms between “Bott–Samelson type” tilting modules can be generated inductively. (The proof of this result involves the study of sections of the ∇ -flag.) In Section 4 we recall the construction of the diagrammatic Hecke category, and explain the construction of the categorical antispherical module. Finally, in Section 5 we state precisely our “categorical” conjecture, and study its main applications.

2. TILTING OBJECTS AND SECTIONS OF THE ∇ -FLAG

2.1. Highest weight categories. Let \mathbb{k} be a field, and let \mathcal{A} be a finite length \mathbb{k} -linear abelian category. We let Λ be a set which parametrizes isomorphism classes of simple objects in \mathcal{A} , and for any $\lambda \in \Lambda$ we fix a representative $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$ of the corresponding class of simple objects. We assume that Λ is equipped with a partial order \leq . In this setting, an *ideal* of Λ is a subset $\Omega \subset \Lambda$ such that for $\lambda, \mu \in \Lambda$,

$$(\mu \in \Omega \ \& \ \lambda \leq \mu) \Rightarrow \lambda \in \Omega.$$

A *coideal* is a subset $\Omega \subset \Lambda$ such that $\Lambda \setminus \Omega$ is an ideal.

For $\Omega \subset \Lambda$, we denote by \mathcal{A}_Ω the Serre subcategory of \mathcal{A} generated by the objects $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$ for $\lambda \in \Omega$. We write $\mathcal{A}_{\leq \lambda}$ for $\mathcal{A}_{\{\mu \in \Lambda \mid \mu \leq \lambda\}}$, and similarly for $\mathcal{A}_{< \lambda}$. Finally, we assume that we are given, for any $\lambda \in \Lambda$, objects $\Delta(\lambda)$ and $\nabla(\lambda)$, and morphisms $\Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{L}(\lambda)$ and $\mathbb{L}(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$.

The following definition is due to Cline–Parshall–Scott [CPS], although our version of it is closer to the some ideas developed in [BGS].

Definition 2.1. The category \mathcal{A} (with the above data) is said to be a *highest weight category* if the following conditions hold.

- (1) For any $\lambda \in \Lambda$, the set $\{\mu \in \Lambda \mid \mu \leq \lambda\}$ is finite.
- (2) For each $\lambda \in \Lambda$, we have $\text{Hom}(\mathbb{L}(\lambda), \mathbb{L}(\lambda)) = \mathbb{k}$.
- (3) For any ideal $\Omega \subset \Lambda$ such that $\lambda \in \Omega$ is maximal, $\Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{L}(\lambda)$ is a projective cover in \mathcal{A}_Ω and $\mathbb{L}(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$ is an injective envelope in \mathcal{A}_Ω .
- (4) The kernel of $\Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{L}(\lambda)$ and the cokernel of $\mathbb{L}(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$ belong to $\mathcal{A}_{< \lambda}$.
- (5) We have $\text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^2(\Delta(\lambda), \nabla(\mu)) = 0$ for all $\lambda, \mu \in \Lambda$.

The poset (Λ, \leq) is called the *weight poset* of this highest weight category.

In the rest of this section we fix a category \mathcal{A} which satisfies Definition 2.1. The objects $\Delta(\lambda)$ are called *standard objects*, and the objects $\nabla(\lambda)$ are called *costandard objects*. These objects satisfy

$$(2.1) \quad \text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^n(\Delta(\lambda), \nabla(\mu)) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{k} & \text{if } \lambda = \mu \text{ and } n = 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

When $\lambda = \mu$ and $n = 0$, the only non zero morphism $\Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$ (up to scalar) is the composition $\Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{L}(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$.

Definition 2.2. Let X be an object of \mathcal{A} . We say that X *admits a standard* (resp. *costandard*) *filtration* if there exists a finite filtration $F_\bullet X$ of X such that each $F_i X / F_{i-1} X$ is isomorphic to some $\Delta(\lambda)$ (resp. $\nabla(\lambda)$) with $\lambda \in \Lambda$.

If X admits a standard, resp. costandard, filtration, we denote by $(X : \Delta(\lambda))$, resp. $(X : \nabla(\lambda))$, the number of times $\Delta(\lambda)$, resp. $\nabla(\lambda)$, appears in a standard, resp. costandard, filtration of X . It is well known that this integer does not depend on the choice of filtration; in fact by (2.1) it equals $\dim_{\mathbb{k}} \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, \nabla(\lambda))$, resp. $\dim_{\mathbb{k}} \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\Delta(\lambda), X)$.

The following well known lemma is proved e.g. in [AR3, Lemma 2.2]. (More precisely, [AR3] considers *graded* highest weight categories, but the proof in the ungraded setting is identical.)

Lemma 2.3. (1) *Let $\Omega \subset \Lambda$ be an ideal. The subcategory $\mathcal{A}_\Omega \subset \mathcal{A}$ is a highest weight category with weight poset (Ω, \leq) and standard (resp. costandard) objects $\Delta(\omega)$ (resp. $\nabla(\omega)$) for $\omega \in \Omega$.*
 (2) *Let $\Omega \subset \Lambda$ be a coideal. The Serre quotient $\mathcal{A}^\Omega := \mathcal{A} / \mathcal{A}_{\Lambda \setminus \Omega}$ is a highest weight category with weight poset (Ω, \leq) . The standard (resp. costandard) objects are the images in the quotient of the objects $\Delta(\omega)$ (resp. $\nabla(\omega)$) for $\omega \in \Omega$.*

In the setting of Lemma 2.3(2), we will usually omit the quotient functor $\mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}^\Omega$ from the notation. This statement has the following consequence.

Corollary 2.4. *Let $\Omega \subset \Lambda$ be a coideal. If $M \in \mathcal{A}$ admits a standard filtration and $N \in \mathcal{A}$ admits a costandard filtration, the morphism*

$$\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(M, N) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}^\Omega}(M, N)$$

is surjective.

Proof. Using the four-lemma, it is enough to prove the claim when $M = \Delta(\lambda)$ and $N = \nabla(\mu)$ for some $\lambda, \mu \in \Lambda$. In this case, it follows from Lemma 2.3(2) and (2.1). \square

2.2. Canonical ∇ -flags. In the rest of the paper we will usually prefer costandard filtrations over standard filtrations. However, very similar constructions can be considered for standard filtrations; we leave the necessary modifications to the reader.

Let X be an object of \mathcal{A} which admits a costandard filtration. A *canonical ∇ -flag* of X is the data, for any ideal $\Omega \subset \Lambda$, of a subobject $\Gamma_\Omega X \subset X$, such that:

- $\bigcup_\Omega \Gamma_\Omega X = X$ and $\bigcap_\Omega \Gamma_\Omega X = 0$;
- $\Omega \subset \Omega' \Rightarrow \Gamma_\Omega X \subset \Gamma_{\Omega'} X$;
- for any ideal Ω and any $\lambda \in \Omega$ maximal, setting $\Omega' := \Omega \setminus \{\lambda\}$ we have that $\Gamma_\Omega X / \Gamma_{\Omega'} X$ is isomorphic to a direct sum of copies of $\nabla(\lambda)$.

Lemma 2.5. *Let X be an object of \mathcal{A} which admits a costandard filtration. A canonical ∇ -flag of X exists and is unique.*

Proof. Existence follows, by induction on the length of a costandard filtration, from the property that $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^1(\nabla(\lambda), \nabla(\mu)) = 0$ unless $\mu < \lambda$ (which itself follows from Property (3) in Definition 2.1).

To prove unicity, it is enough to prove that if $\lambda \in \Lambda$ is minimal for the property that $(X : \nabla(\lambda)) \neq 0$, then there exists a unique subobject $X' \subset X$ which is isomorphic to a direct sum of copies of $\nabla(\lambda)$ and such that X/X' admits a costandard filtration such that $(X/X' : \nabla(\lambda)) = 0$. However we observe that

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\nabla(\lambda), \nabla(\mu)) \neq 0 \Rightarrow \mu \leq \lambda$$

(because the image of any non-zero morphism $\nabla(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\mu)$ must contain the socle $\mathbb{L}(\mu)$ of $\nabla(\mu)$), so that X' is characterized as the sum of the images of all morphisms $\nabla(\lambda) \rightarrow X$. \square

Because of Lemma 2.5, we can consider *the* canonical ∇ -flag of an object X which admits a costandard filtration, and use the notation $\Gamma_{\Omega}X$ unambiguously (for Ω an ideal).

2.3. Tilting objects and sections of the ∇ -flag. Recall that we say that an object X of \mathcal{A} is *tilting* if it admits both a standard and a costandard filtration. We denote by $\mathrm{Tilt}(\mathcal{A})$ the additive full subcategory of \mathcal{A} whose objects are the tilting objects. It is well known that this category is Krull–Schmidt, and that its isomorphism classes of indecomposable objects are parametrized by Λ . In fact, for $\lambda \in \Lambda$, the corresponding indecomposable object $\mathbb{T}(\lambda)$ is characterized (up to isomorphism) by the property that

$$(\mathbb{T}(\lambda) : \nabla(\mu)) \neq 0 \Rightarrow \mu \leq \lambda.$$

We also note that $(\mathbb{T}(\lambda) : \Delta(\mu)) \neq 0$ implies that $\mu \leq \lambda$, and that $(\mathbb{T}(\lambda) : \nabla(\lambda)) = (\mathbb{T}(\lambda) : \Delta(\lambda)) = 1$.

The following properties of tilting objects are well known.

Lemma 2.6. *Let $\lambda \in \Lambda$.*

- (1) *We have $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\Delta(\lambda), \mathbb{T}(\lambda)) \cong \mathbb{k}$, and any nonzero morphism $\Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}(\lambda)$ is injective.*
- (2) *We have $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), \nabla(\lambda)) \cong \mathbb{k}$, and any nonzero morphism $\mathbb{T}(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$ is surjective.*
- (3) *If $\varphi : \Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}(\lambda)$ and $\psi : \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$ are nonzero, then the composition $\psi \circ \varphi$ is nonzero.*

For $\lambda \in \Lambda$ we set

$$\mathcal{A}^{\geq \lambda} := \mathcal{A}^{\{\mu \in \Lambda \mid \mu \geq \lambda\}} = \mathcal{A} / \mathcal{A}_{\{\mu \in \Lambda \mid \mu \not\geq \lambda\}}.$$

Note that the images in $\mathcal{A}^{\geq \lambda}$ of the objects

$$\Delta(\lambda), \quad \nabla(\lambda), \quad \mathbb{L}(\lambda), \quad \mathbb{T}(\lambda)$$

all coincide, and are equal to the standard object attached to λ in $\mathcal{A}^{\geq \lambda}$.

Definition 2.7. Let X be an object of \mathcal{A} which admits a costandard filtration. A *section of the ∇ -flag* of X is a triple $(\Pi, e, (\varphi_{\pi}^X)_{\pi \in \Pi})$ where:

- Π is a finite set;
- $e : \Pi \rightarrow \Lambda$ is a map;
- for each $\pi \in \Pi$, φ_{π}^X is an element in $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\mathbb{T}(e(\pi)), X)$

such that for any $\lambda \in \Lambda$, the images of the morphisms

$$\{\varphi_{\pi}^X : \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \rightarrow X : \pi \in e^{-1}(\lambda)\}$$

form a basis of $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}^{\geq \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), X) = \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}^{\geq \lambda}}(\nabla(\lambda), X)$ (where, as usual, we omit the quotient functor $\mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}^{\geq \lambda}$ from the notation).

Note that, by Lemma 2.3(2), we have

$$\dim_{\mathbb{k}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}^{\geq \lambda}}(\nabla(\lambda), X) = \dim_{\mathbb{k}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}^{\geq \lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), X) = (X : \nabla(\lambda)),$$

so that the number of maps φ_{π}^X such that $e(\pi) = \lambda$ in a section of the ∇ -flag of X is $(X : \nabla(\lambda))$. Note also that Corollary 2.4 guarantees that sections of the ∇ -flag always exist (for objects admitting a costandard filtration); they are far from unique, however.

Remark 2.8. As was pointed out to us by H. H. Andersen, our notion of a section of the ∇ -flag is not unrelated to the constructions in [AST, §4.1]. In fact, our condition on the morphisms φ_{π}^X can be equivalently stated as the requirement that for all $\lambda \in \Lambda$, the compositions

$$\Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^X} X$$

for $\pi \in e^{-1}(\lambda)$ (where the first morphism is a fixed nonzero morphism, which is unique up to scalar and injective) form a basis of $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\Delta(\lambda), X)$. From this point of view, a section of the ∇ -flag is the same as a choice of morphisms \bar{g}_i^{λ} for all λ , using the notation of [AST, §4.1].

We conclude the generalities with two easy lemmas.

Lemma 2.9. *Let X be an object which admits a costandard filtration, and let $(\Pi, e, (\varphi_{\pi}^X)_{\pi \in \Pi})$ be a section of the ∇ -flag of X . Let also $\Omega \subset \Lambda$ be an ideal. Then for any π in $\Pi_{\Omega} := \{\pi \in \Pi \mid e(\pi) \in \Omega\}$, the map φ_{π}^X factors through a map $\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega} X} : \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \rightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega} X$, and setting $e_{\Omega} := e|_{\Pi_{\Omega}}$, the triple*

$$(\Pi_{\Omega}, e_{\Omega}, (\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega} X})_{\pi \in \Pi_{\Omega}})$$

is a section of the ∇ -flag of $\Gamma_{\Omega} X$.

Proof. For any $\lambda \in \Omega$, the exact sequence $\Gamma_{\Omega} X \hookrightarrow X \twoheadrightarrow X/\Gamma_{\Omega} X$ induces an exact sequence

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), \Gamma_{\Omega} X) \hookrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), X) \twoheadrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), X/\Gamma_{\Omega} X).$$

Now $(\mathbb{T}(\lambda) : \Delta(\mu)) = 0$ unless $\mu \in \Omega$, hence the third term in this exact sequence vanishes. Hence the first arrow in an isomorphism, which shows that, for any $\pi \in \Pi_{\Omega}$, φ_{π}^X factors through a map $\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega} X} : \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \rightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega} X$. Similar arguments show that for any $\lambda \in \Omega$ the natural morphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}^{\geq \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), \Gamma_{\Omega} X) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}^{\geq \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), X)$$

is an isomorphism, which implies that indeed $(\Pi_{\Omega}, e|_{\Pi_{\Omega}}, (\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega} X})_{\pi \in \Pi_{\Omega}})$ is a section of the ∇ -flag of $\Gamma_{\Omega} X$. \square

The proof of the following lemma is similar to that of Lemma 2.9, hence left to the reader.

Lemma 2.10. *Let X be an object which admits a costandard filtration, and let $(\Pi, e, (\varphi_{\pi}^X)_{\pi \in \Pi})$ be a section of the ∇ -flag of X . Let also $\Omega \subset \Lambda$ be an ideal. For any π in $\Pi^{\Omega} := \{\pi \in \Pi \mid e(\pi) \notin \Omega\}$, consider the composition*

$$\varphi_{\pi}^{X/\Gamma_{\Omega} X} : \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^X} X \twoheadrightarrow X/\Gamma_{\Omega} X.$$

Setting $e^\Omega := e|_{\Pi^\Omega}$, the triple

$$(\Pi^\Omega, e^\Omega, (\varphi_\pi^{X/\Gamma_\Omega X})_{\pi \in \Pi^\Omega})$$

is a section of the ∇ -flag of $X/\Gamma_\Omega X$. \square

3. REGULAR AND SUBREGULAR BLOCKS OF REDUCTIVE GROUPS

3.1. Definitions. In this section we fix an algebraically closed field \mathbb{k} of characteristic p and a connected reductive algebraic group G over \mathbb{k} with simply-connected derived subgroup. We will assume that $p \geq h$, where h is the Coxeter number of G (i.e. the maximum of the Coxeter numbers of all simple components of the root system of G , see [Ja, §II.6.2]).

We fix a Borel subgroup $B \subset G$ and a maximal torus $T \subset B$, and denote by $\mathbf{X} = X^*(T)$ the lattice of characters of T . We denote by Φ the root system of (G, T) , by Φ^\vee the corresponding coroots, and by $\Phi^+ \subset \Phi$ the system of positive roots consisting of the roots which do *not* appear in the Lie algebra of B (so that B is the “negative” Borel subgroup). This choice determines a basis Σ of Φ , and a subset $\mathbf{X}^+ \subset \mathbf{X}$ of *dominant weights*. We denote by $\rho \in \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{X}$ the half sum of positive roots; then we have $\langle \rho, \alpha^\vee \rangle = 1$ for all $\alpha \in \Sigma$, where α^\vee is the coroot associated with the root α .

We denote by $W_f := N_G(T)/T$ the Weyl group of (G, T) . We will also consider the affine Weyl group $W := W_f \ltimes \mathbb{Z}\Phi$. To avoid confusions, for $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}\Phi$ we denote by t_λ the corresponding element of W . The group W acts on \mathbf{X} via the “dot-action” defined by

$$wt_\lambda \bullet \mu := w(\mu + p\lambda + \rho) - \rho.$$

Let $S \subset W$ be the set of simple reflections, i.e. the reflections whose associated hyperplane (for the dot-action) meets

$$\overline{C} := \{\lambda \in \mathbf{X} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{R} \mid \forall \alpha \in \Phi^+, 0 \leq \langle \lambda + \rho, \alpha^\vee \rangle \leq p\}.$$

Let also $S_f = S \cap W_f$; this set is in a natural bijection with Σ . The pairs (W, S) and (W_f, S_f) are Coxeter groups, and we denote by ℓ their length function. We will denote by fW the subset of W consisting of the elements w which are of minimal length in their coset $W_f w$.

We will denote by $\text{Rep}(G)$ the abelian category of finite dimensional (algebraic) representations of G . It is well known that the simple objects in this category are parametrized by \mathbf{X}^+ ; for any $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+$ we denote by $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$ a choice of a corresponding simple object.

Let us consider

$$C_{\mathbb{Z}} := \{\lambda \in \mathbf{X} \mid \forall \alpha \in \Phi^+, 0 < \langle \lambda + \rho, \alpha^\vee \rangle < p\}.$$

Since $p \geq h$, we have $C_{\mathbb{Z}} \neq \emptyset$, see [Ja, §II.6.2], so that we can choose some $\lambda_0 \in C_{\mathbb{Z}}$. (A typical choice would be $\lambda_0 = 0$, but we allow an arbitrary choice.) Then we set

$$\mathbf{X}_0^+ := (W \bullet \lambda_0) \cap \mathbf{X}^+.$$

Recall that for $w \in W$ we have $w \bullet \lambda_0 \in \mathbf{X}^+$ iff $w \in {}^fW$, so that this set is a natural bijection with fW . We denote by

$$\text{Rep}_0(G)$$

the Serre subcategory of $\text{Rep}(G)$ generated by the simple objects $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$ for $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}_0^+$. For $\lambda \in W \bullet \lambda_0$, by our choice of λ_0 there exists a *unique* $w \in W$ such that $\lambda = w \bullet \lambda_0$. Then for $s \in S$ we set

$$\lambda^s := ws \bullet \lambda_0.$$

For any $s \in S$, we fix a weight μ_s in

$$\overline{\mathcal{C}}_Z := \{\lambda \in \mathbf{X} \mid \forall \alpha \in \Phi^+, 0 \leq \langle \lambda + \rho, \alpha^\vee \rangle \leq p\}$$

which lies on the reflection hyperplane of s and is contained in no other reflection hyperplane; such a weight exists under our assumptions by [Ja, §II.6.3]. Then we set

$$\mathbf{X}_s^+ := (W \bullet \mu_s) \cap \mathbf{X}^+,$$

and denote by

$$\text{Rep}_s(G)$$

the Serre subcategory of $\text{Rep}(G)$ generated by the simple objects $\mathbb{L}(\mu)$ for $\mu \in \mathbf{X}_s^+$.

For any $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+$ we consider the G -modules

$$\nabla(\lambda) := \text{Ind}_B^G(\lambda), \quad \Delta(\lambda) := (\nabla(-w_0\lambda))^*,$$

where $w_0 \in W_f$ is the longest element. It is well known that for $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+$ there exists (up to scalar) a unique non zero morphism $\Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$. We fix such a morphism; its image is isomorphic to $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$, so that it factors as a composition $\Delta(\lambda) \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{L}(\lambda) \hookrightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$. Recall the order \uparrow on \mathbf{X}^+ defined in [Ja, §II.6.4]. It is well known that $\text{Rep}(G)$, endowed with the parametrization of simple objects by the poset (\mathbf{X}^+, \uparrow) , and with the collections of objects $\nabla(\lambda)$, $\Delta(\lambda)$, $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$ and the morphisms $\Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{L}(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$ considered above, is a highest weight category. Since the subsets \mathbf{X}_0^+ and \mathbf{X}_s^+ are both ideals of the poset (\mathbf{X}^+, \uparrow) , the subcategories $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ and $\text{Rep}_s(G)$ also have canonical highest weight structures (see Lemma 2.3(1)), and we can consider the corresponding tilting objects $\mathbb{T}(\lambda)$ (see §2.3).

3.2. Translation functors. Let us fix a simple reflection $s \in S$. Then one can consider the *translation functors*

$$T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s} : \text{Rep}_0(G) \rightarrow \text{Rep}_s(G), \quad T_{\mu_s}^{\lambda_0} : \text{Rep}_s(G) \rightarrow \text{Rep}_0(G),$$

see [Ja, §II.7]. It is more reasonable to consider that these functors are defined only up to isomorphism: they depend at least on the choice of the module by which one tensors, see in particular [Ja, Remark II.7.6(1)]. So we fix some functors

$$\mathbb{T}^s : \text{Rep}_0(G) \rightarrow \text{Rep}_s(G), \quad \mathbb{T}_s : \text{Rep}_s(G) \rightarrow \text{Rep}_0(G)$$

which are *isomorphic* to some translation functors $T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s}$ and $T_{\mu_s}^{\lambda_0}$ respectively. We also fix some (arbitrary) adjunctions $(\mathbb{T}_s, \mathbb{T}^s)$ and $(\mathbb{T}^s, \mathbb{T}_s)$; we will simply write

$$\text{id} \xrightarrow{\text{adj}} \mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}^s, \quad \text{id} \xrightarrow{\text{adj}} \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}_s, \quad \mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}^s \xrightarrow{\text{adj}} \text{id}, \quad \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}_s \xrightarrow{\text{adj}} \text{id}$$

for the corresponding adjunction morphisms.

Remark 3.1. If the functors $T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s}$ and $T_{\mu_s}^{\lambda_0}$ are defined using the tensor product with a G -module and with its dual respectively, which is allowed, then there exists natural adjunctions $(T_{\mu_s}^{\lambda_0}, T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s})$ and $(T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s}, T_{\mu_s}^{\lambda_0})$; see [Ja, Lemma II.7.6]. So, at least the adjunctions $(\mathbb{T}_s, \mathbb{T}^s)$ and $(\mathbb{T}^s, \mathbb{T}_s)$ exist. But we do *not* assume that our chosen adjunctions are obtained in this way.

It is well known (see e.g. [Ja, Propositions II.7.11 & II.7.19]) that the functors T_s and T^s send standard, resp. costandard, objects to objects which admit a standard, resp. costandard, filtration. Hence they send objects which admit a standard, resp. costandard, filtration to objects which admit a standard, resp. costandard, filtration. In particular, they send tilting objects to tilting objects.

Let $\mu \in \mathbf{X}_s^+$, and let λ be the unique weight in \mathbf{X}_0^+ which belongs to an alcove containing μ in its closure and such that $\lambda \uparrow \lambda^s$. Then by [Ja, §II.E.11] we have

$$(3.1) \quad T_s T(\mu) \cong T(\lambda^s).$$

We fix such an isomorphism once and for all. Similarly, we have $(T^s T(\lambda) : \nabla(\mu)) = 1$, and μ is maximal in the collection of weights ν such that $(T^s T(\lambda) : \nabla(\nu)) \neq 0$. Therefore $T(\mu)$ is a direct summand of $T^s T(\lambda)$, with multiplicity 1. We fix once and for all a split embedding and a split surjection

$$(3.2) \quad T(\mu) \hookrightarrow T^s T(\lambda) \twoheadrightarrow T(\mu).$$

In Section 5 we will need the following fact.

Lemma 3.2. *Let $y \in {}^f W$ and $s \in S$, and assume that $ys > y$ the Bruhat order and $ys \in {}^f W$. Then, if $\lambda := y \bullet \lambda_0$, then the morphism*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(\Delta(\lambda), T_s T^s \Delta(\lambda)) \rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), T_s T^s \Delta(\lambda))$$

induced by the quotient functor is an isomorphism, and both vector spaces are 1-dimensional.

Proof. By adjunction we have

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(\Delta(\lambda), T_s T^s \Delta(\lambda)) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(T^s \Delta(\lambda), T^s \Delta(\lambda)),$$

and $T^s \Delta(\lambda) \cong \Delta(\mu)$ where μ is the only weight in \mathbf{X}_s^+ which belongs to the closure of the alcove of λ (see [Ja, Proposition II.7.11]). Hence the left-hand side is one-dimensional. Similar arguments, using [Ja, Proposition II.7.15], show that the morphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(\Delta(\lambda), T_s T^s \Delta(\lambda)) &\rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(\Delta(\lambda), T_s T^s \mathbb{L}(\lambda)) \\ &\rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(\Delta(\lambda), T_s T^s \nabla(\lambda)) \end{aligned}$$

induced by our fixed morphisms $\Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{L}(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$ are isomorphisms.

Now we observe that the morphisms $T_s T^s \Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow T_s T^s \mathbb{L}(\lambda) \rightarrow T_s T^s \nabla(\lambda)$ are isomorphisms in $\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}$, so that we also have a canonical isomorphism

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), T_s T^s \Delta(\lambda)) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), T_s T^s \nabla(\lambda)),$$

and what remains is to prove that the morphism

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(\Delta(\lambda), T_s T^s \nabla(\lambda)) \rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), T_s T^s \nabla(\lambda))$$

induced by the quotient functor is an isomorphism. This follows from the well-known fact that $T_s T^s \nabla(\lambda)$ admits a costandard filtration with $(T_s T^s \nabla(\lambda) : \Delta(\lambda)) = 1$ and from Lemma 2.3(2). \square

Finally we recall the following well-known fact, which follows e.g. from [Ja, Proposition II.7.19(a)].

Lemma 3.3. *For any $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}_0^+$ such that $\lambda^s \notin \mathbf{X}^+$ and any $M \in \mathrm{Rep}_s(G)$ which admits a costandard filtration, we have $(T_s M : \nabla(\lambda)) = 0$.*

3.3. Sections of the ∇ -flag and translation to a wall. As in §3.2, let s be a simple reflection. In this subsection we explain how, given an object M in $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ which admits a costandard filtration and a section of the ∇ -flag of M , one can construct a section of the ∇ -flag of $\mathbb{T}^s M$. This construction is not canonical, but depends on the choices of morphisms in §3.2. The basic idea of this construction is inspired by a construction due to Libedinsky in the setting of Soergel bimodules, see [Li].

Let $M \in \text{Rep}_0(G)$ be an object which admits a costandard filtration, and let $(\Pi, e, (\varphi_\pi^M)_{\pi \in \Pi})$ be a section of the ∇ -flag of M . We set

$$\Pi' := \{\pi \in \Pi \mid e(\pi)^s \in \mathbf{X}^+\},$$

and for $\pi \in \Pi'$ we define $e'(\pi)$ as the unique weight in \mathbf{X}_s^+ which lies in the closure of the alcove containing $e(\pi)$. (Our definition of Π' ensures that such an element exists.) This defines a map $e': \Pi' \rightarrow \mathbf{X}_s^+$. Now we explain how to define, for any $\pi \in \Pi'$, a morphism $\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s M}: \mathbb{T}(e'(\pi)) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}^s M$.

First, let us consider the case where $e(\pi) \downarrow e(\pi)^s$. In this setting we have fixed an isomorphism $\mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}(e'(\pi)) \cong \mathbb{T}(e(\pi))$, see (3.1). We define $\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s M}$ as the image of φ_π^M under the composition

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(e(\pi)), M) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}(e'(\pi)), M) \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_s(G)}(\mathbb{T}(e'(\pi)), \mathbb{T}^s M), \end{aligned}$$

where the second isomorphism is obtained from our chosen adjunction $(\mathbb{T}_s, \mathbb{T}^s)$. In other words, $\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s M}$ is the composition

$$\mathbb{T}(e'(\pi)) \xrightarrow{\text{adj}} \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}_s(\mathbb{T}(e'(\pi))) \cong \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \xrightarrow{\mathbb{T}^s(\varphi_\pi^M)} \mathbb{T}^s M.$$

Now, let us consider the case where $e(\pi) \uparrow e(\pi)^s$. In this case, we have fixed a split embedding $\mathbb{T}(e'(\pi)) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(e(\pi))$, see (3.2). We define $\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s M}$ as the composition

$$\mathbb{T}(e'(\pi)) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \xrightarrow{\mathbb{T}^s(\varphi_\pi^M)} \mathbb{T}^s M.$$

Remark 3.4. A point which will be important for us later is that in both cases the morphism $\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s M}$ factors through the morphism $\mathbb{T}^s(\varphi_\pi^M): \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}^s M$.

The main result of this subsection is the following.

Proposition 3.5. *The triple $(\Pi', e', (\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s M})_{\pi \in \Pi'})$ constructed above is a section of the ∇ -flag of $\mathbb{T}^s M$.*

Before proving this result in general, we consider the special case where there exists $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}_0^+$ such that M is a direct sum of objects $\nabla(\lambda)$.

Lemma 3.6. *Let $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}_0^+$. If M is isomorphic to a direct sum of objects $\nabla(\lambda)$, the triple $(\Pi', e', (\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s M})_{\pi \in \Pi'})$ constructed above is a section of the ∇ -flag of $\mathbb{T}^s M$.*

Proof. For any $\pi \in \Pi$ we denote by M_π the image of φ_π^M . Then each M_π is isomorphic to $\nabla(\lambda)$, and we have $M = \bigoplus_{\pi \in \Pi} M_\pi$. Hence it is sufficient to prove the lemma in the case $M = \nabla(\lambda)$.

By Lemma 2.6, a section of the ∇ -flag of $\nabla(\lambda)$ is unique up to scalar, so that we can assume that $\Pi = \{\lambda\}$, $e(\lambda) = \lambda$ and $\varphi_\lambda^{\nabla(\lambda)}: \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$ is a non-zero (hence surjective) morphism. If $\lambda^s \notin \mathbf{X}^+$ then $\mathbb{T}^s \nabla(\lambda) = 0$, and there is nothing to prove.

Now, assume that $\lambda^s \in \mathbf{X}^+$. Then $\Pi' = \{\lambda\}$, and we set $\mu := e'(\lambda)$. In this case, by [Ja, Proposition II.7.11] we have $\mathbb{T}^s \nabla(\lambda) \cong \nabla(\mu)$, so that to prove the claim

it suffices to prove that $\varphi_\lambda^{\mathbb{T}^s \nabla(\lambda)} \neq 0$. If $\lambda \downarrow \lambda^s$, then by construction $\varphi_\lambda^{\mathbb{T}^s \nabla(\lambda)}$ is non-zero, hence there is nothing to prove. If $\lambda \uparrow \lambda^s$, then $\mathbb{T}(\mu)$ is the only direct summand of $\mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(\lambda)$ which has $\mathbb{L}(\mu)$ as a composition factor. Since the morphism $\mathbb{T}^s(\varphi_\lambda^{\nabla(\lambda)})$ is non zero (in fact it is surjective, since $\varphi_\lambda^{\nabla(\lambda)}$ is surjective and \mathbb{T}^s is exact), its image contains the socle $\mathbb{L}(\mu)$ of $\mathbb{T}^s \nabla(\lambda) \cong \nabla(\mu)$, so that its restriction to $\mathbb{T}(\mu)$ must be non zero, proving the claim in this case also. \square

Proof of Proposition 3.5. We have to prove that, for any $\mu \in \mathbf{X}_s^+$, the images of the morphisms $\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s M}$ with $e'(\pi) = \mu$ form a basis of $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_s(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\mu), \mathbb{T}^s M)$. If this morphisms space is nonzero, then there exists a unique λ in \mathbf{X}_0^+ which belongs to an alcove containing μ in its closure and such that $\lambda \uparrow \lambda^s$ and $\lambda^s \in \mathbf{X}^+$ (see Lemma 3.3). Then $e'(\pi) = \mu$ iff $e(\pi) \in \{\lambda, \lambda^s\}$. Let also $\Omega \subset \mathbf{X}_0^+$ be an ideal such that $\Omega \cap \{\lambda, \lambda^s\} = \{\lambda\}$, and such that both

$$\Omega' := \Omega \setminus \{\lambda\} \quad \text{and} \quad \Omega'' := \Omega \cup \{\lambda^s\}$$

are ideals. (For instance, $\Omega = \{\mu \in \mathbf{X}_0^+ \mid \mu \uparrow \lambda^s\} \setminus \{\lambda^s\}$ satisfies these conditions.) Then we have inclusions

$$\Gamma_{\Omega'} M \hookrightarrow \Gamma_\Omega M \hookrightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega''} M \hookrightarrow M,$$

which induce inclusions

$$\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega'} M) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_\Omega M) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''} M) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}^s(M).$$

By Lemma 2.9, every morphism φ_π^M with $e(\pi) = \lambda$, resp. $e(\pi) = \lambda^s$, factors through a morphism $\varphi_\pi^{\Gamma_\Omega M} : \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \rightarrow \Gamma_\Omega M$, resp. $\varphi_\pi^{\Gamma_{\Omega''} M} : \mathbb{T}(\lambda^s) \rightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega''} M$. Then by construction the corresponding morphisms $\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s M} : \mathbb{T}(\mu) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}^s M$ factor through morphisms

$$\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_\Omega M)} : \mathbb{T}(\mu) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_\Omega M), \quad \text{resp.} \quad \varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''} M)} : \mathbb{T}(\mu) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''} M).$$

It is clear that these morphisms coincide with the morphisms obtained by the same procedure applied to the section of the ∇ -flag $(\Pi_\Omega, e_\Omega, (\varphi_\pi^{\Gamma_\Omega M})_{\pi \in \Pi_\Omega})$ of $\Gamma_\Omega M$, resp. the section of the ∇ -flag $(\Pi_{\Omega''}, e_{\Omega''}, (\varphi_\pi^{\Gamma_{\Omega''} M})_{\pi \in \Pi_{\Omega''}})$ of $\Gamma_{\Omega''} M$.

Similarly (see Lemma 2.10), if $e(\pi) = \lambda$, resp. $e(\pi) = \lambda^s$, considering the compositions

$$\varphi_\pi^{\Gamma_\Omega M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M} : \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \xrightarrow{\varphi_\pi^{\Gamma_\Omega M}} \Gamma_\Omega M \twoheadrightarrow \Gamma_\Omega M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M,$$

resp.

$$\varphi_\pi^{\Gamma_{\Omega''} M / \Gamma_\Omega M} : \mathbb{T}(\lambda^s) \xrightarrow{\varphi_\pi^{\Gamma_{\Omega''} M}} \Gamma_{\Omega''} M \twoheadrightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega''} M / \Gamma_\Omega M,$$

the morphisms

$$\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_\Omega M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M)} : \mathbb{T}(\mu) \xrightarrow{\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_\Omega M)}} \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_\Omega M) \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_\Omega M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M),$$

resp.

$$\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''} M / \Gamma_\Omega M)} : \mathbb{T}(\mu) \xrightarrow{\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''} M)}} \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''} M) \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''} M / \Gamma_\Omega M),$$

coincide with the morphisms obtained by the same procedure applied to the section of the ∇ -flag $(e^{-1}(\lambda), e|_{e^{-1}(\lambda)}, (\varphi_\pi^{\Gamma_\Omega M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M})_{\pi \in e^{-1}(\lambda)})$ of $\Gamma_\Omega M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M$, resp. the section of the ∇ -flag $(e^{-1}(\lambda^s), e|_{e^{-1}(\lambda^s)}, (\varphi_\pi^{\Gamma_{\Omega''} M / \Gamma_\Omega M})_{\pi \in e^{-1}(\lambda^s)})$ of $\Gamma_{\Omega''} M / \Gamma_\Omega M$.

Finally, for π in $e^{-1}(\lambda)$, resp. $e^{-1}(\lambda^s)$, we will consider the compositions

$$\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M} : \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M}} \Gamma_{\Omega}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M \hookrightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M,$$

resp.

$$\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M} : \mathbb{T}(\lambda^s) \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega''}M}} \Gamma_{\Omega''}M \twoheadrightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M,$$

and the corresponding morphisms

$$\varphi_{\pi}^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M)} : \mathbb{T}(\mu) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M).$$

Note that by construction for $\pi \in e^{-1}(\lambda^s)$, the composition

$$\mathbb{T}(\mu) \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M)}} \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M) \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega}M)$$

coincides with $\varphi_{\pi}^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega}M)}$.

Consider now the exact sequence

$$\Gamma_{\Omega}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M \hookrightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M \twoheadrightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega}M,$$

its image under \mathbb{T}^s . and the induced exact sequence

$$\begin{aligned} (3.3) \quad \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_s(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\mu), \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M)) \\ \hookrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_s(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\mu), \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M)) \\ \twoheadrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_s(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\mu), \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega}M)). \end{aligned}$$

Since $\Gamma_{\Omega}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M$, resp. $\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega}M$, is a direct sum of copies of $\nabla(\lambda)$, resp. of $\nabla(\lambda^s)$, it follows from Lemma 3.6 that the images of the morphisms $\varphi_{\pi}^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M)}$ for $\pi \in e^{-1}(\lambda)$, resp. $\varphi_{\pi}^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega}M)}$ for $\pi \in e^{-1}(\lambda^s)$, form a basis of the first, resp. third, space in (3.3). Therefore, the images of the morphisms $\varphi_{\pi}^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M)}$ for $\pi \in e^{-1}(\{\lambda, \lambda^s\}) = (e')^{-1}(\mu)$ form a basis of the second term in the exact sequence. Now, by definition of Ω' and Ω'' , we have

$$(\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega'}M), \nabla(\mu)) = (\mathbb{T}^s(M)/\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M), \nabla(\mu)) = 0,$$

so that we have canonical isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_s(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\mu), \mathbb{T}^s M) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_s(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\mu), \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M)) \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_s(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\mu), \mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M)/\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega'}M)). \end{aligned}$$

Under these isomorphisms, for $\pi \in (e')^{-1}(\mu)$ the image of $\varphi_{\pi}^{\mathbb{T}^s M}$ in the first term correspond to the image of $\varphi_{\pi}^{\mathbb{T}^s(\Gamma_{\Omega''}M/\Gamma_{\Omega'}M)}$ in the third term. Therefore the image of the collection $(\varphi_{\pi}^{\mathbb{T}^s M})_{\pi \in (e')^{-1}(\mu)}$ forms a basis of $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_s(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\mu), \mathbb{T}^s M)$, and the proof is complete. \square

3.4. Sections of the ∇ -flag and translation from a wall. As in §3.2, let s be a simple reflection. In this subsection we explain how, given an object M in $\text{Rep}_s(G)$ which admits a costandard filtration and a section of the ∇ -flag of M , one can construct a section of the ∇ -flag of $\mathbb{T}_s M$. Again, this construction depends on the choices of morphisms in §3.2, and the idea goes back to [Li].

Let $M \in \text{Rep}_s(G)$ be an object which admits a costandard filtration, and let $(\Pi, e, (\varphi_{\pi}^M)_{\pi \in \Pi})$ be a section of the ∇ -flag of M . We set

$$\Pi' := \Pi \times \{0, 1\}.$$

We define the map $e' : \Pi' \rightarrow \mathbf{X}_0^+$ as follows. Given $\pi \in \Pi$, the images $e'(\pi, 0)$ and $e'(\pi, 1)$ are characterized by the following properties:

- $e(\pi)$ belongs to the closures of the alcoves containing $e'(\pi, 0)$ and $e'(\pi, 1)$;
- $e'(\pi, 0)^s = e'(\pi, 1)$;
- $e'(\pi, 0) \uparrow e'(\pi, 1)$.

Finally we need to define, for any $\pi \in \Pi$, morphisms $\varphi_{(\pi, 0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$ and $\varphi_{(\pi, 1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$. First, recall that we have fixed an isomorphism $\mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \cong \mathbb{T}(e'(\pi, 1))$, see (3.1). Using this isomorphism we simply define $\varphi_{(\pi, 1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$ as the composition

$$\mathbb{T}(e'(\pi, 1)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \xrightarrow{\mathbb{T}_s(\varphi_\pi^M)} \mathbb{T}_s M.$$

On the other hand, we have also fixed a projection $\mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(e'(\pi, 0)) \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{T}(e(\pi))$, see (3.2). We define $\varphi_{(\pi, 0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$ as the composition

$$\mathbb{T}(e'(\pi, 0)) \xrightarrow{\text{adj}} \mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(e'(\pi, 0)) \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \xrightarrow{\mathbb{T}_s(\varphi_\pi^M)} \mathbb{T}_s M.$$

In other words, $\varphi_{(\pi, 0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$ is the image of the composition

$$\mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(e'(\pi, 0)) \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \xrightarrow{\varphi_\pi^M} M$$

under the isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_s(G)}(\mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(e'(\pi, 0)), M) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(e'(\pi, 0)), \mathbb{T}_s M)$$

induced by our adjunction $(\mathbb{T}^s, \mathbb{T}_s)$.

Remark 3.7. As in §3.3, an important point for us is that both $\varphi_{(\pi, 0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$ and $\varphi_{(\pi, 1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$ factor through the morphism $\mathbb{T}_s(\varphi_\pi^M) : \mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}(e(\pi)) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}_s M$.

The main result of this subsection is the following.

Proposition 3.8. *The triple $(\Pi', e', (\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}_s M})_{\pi \in \Pi'})$ constructed above is a section of the ∇ -flag of $\mathbb{T}_s M$.*

As in §3.3, before proving this result in general, we consider the special case where there exists $\mu \in \mathbf{X}_s^+$ such that M is a direct sum of objects $\nabla(\mu)$ for some $\mu \in \mathbf{X}_s^+$.

Lemma 3.9. *Let $\mu \in \mathbf{X}_s^+$. If M is isomorphic to a direct sum of objects $\nabla(\mu)$, the triple $(\Pi', e', (\varphi_\pi^{\mathbb{T}_s M})_{\pi \in \Pi'})$ constructed above is a section of the ∇ -flag of $\mathbb{T}_s M$.*

Proof. As in the proof of Lemma 3.6, we can assume $M = \nabla(\mu)$, and then that $\Pi = \{\mu\}$, $e(\mu) = \mu$, and $\varphi_\mu^{\nabla(\mu)}$ is a non-zero (hence surjective) morphism $\mathbb{T}(\mu) \rightarrow \nabla(\mu)$. Let $\lambda = e'(\mu, 0)$, so that $\lambda^s = e'(\mu, 1)$ and $\lambda \uparrow \lambda^s$. By [Ja, Proposition II.7.19], there exists a short exact sequence

$$\nabla(\lambda) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu) \twoheadrightarrow \nabla(\lambda^s).$$

We have morphisms $\varphi_{(\mu, 0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)} : \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)$ and $\varphi_{(\mu, 1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)} : \mathbb{T}(\lambda^s) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)$, and to prove the lemma it suffices to prove that the compositions

$$\Delta(\lambda) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \xrightarrow{\varphi_{(\mu, 0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)}} \mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu) \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta(\lambda^s) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}(\lambda^s) \xrightarrow{\varphi_{(\mu, 1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)}} \mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)$$

are non zero (see Remark 2.8).

Consider first the case of $\varphi_{(\mu,1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)}$. By construction and exactness of \mathbb{T}_s , the morphism $\varphi_{(\mu,1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)}$ is surjective. Hence the composition with the embedding of $\Delta(\lambda^s)$ cannot vanish, since $[\mathbb{T}(\lambda^s)/\Delta(\lambda^s) : \mathbb{L}(\lambda^s)] = 0$, so that no morphism $\mathbb{T}(\lambda^s)/\Delta(\lambda^s) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)$ can be surjective.

Consider now $\varphi_{(\mu,0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)}$. By the same arguments as in the proof of Lemma 2.9, this morphism must factor through a morphism $\mathbb{T}(\lambda) \rightarrow \nabla(\lambda)$, so that we only have to prove that $\varphi_{(\mu,0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)} \neq 0$ (see Lemma 2.6). However, the composition

$$\mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{T}(\mu) \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\mu}^{\nabla(\mu)}} \nabla(\mu)$$

is surjective, hence non zero. By construction, this implies that $\varphi_{(\mu,0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s \nabla(\mu)} \neq 0$, and finishes the proof. \square

Proof of Proposition 3.8. This proof is very similar to the proof of Proposition 3.5.

Let $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}_0^+$. If $\lambda^s \notin \mathbf{X}_0^+$, then $(\mathbb{T}_s M : \nabla(\lambda)) = 0$ and $\lambda \notin e'(\Pi')$, so that there is nothing to prove for this λ . Assume now that $\lambda^s \in \mathbf{X}^+$, and let $\mu \in \mathbf{X}_s^+$ be the unique element which belongs to the closure of the alcoves of λ and λ^s . Replacing λ by λ^s if necessary, we can assume that $\lambda \uparrow \lambda^s$, so that for $\pi \in \Pi$ we have $e(\pi, 0) = \lambda$ iff $e(\pi, 1) = \lambda^s$ iff $e(\pi) = \mu$. We have to prove that, for such π 's, the images of the morphisms $\varphi_{(\pi,0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$ in $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), \mathbb{T}_s M)$, resp. the images of the morphisms $\varphi_{(\pi,1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$ in $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda^s}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda^s), \mathbb{T}_s M)$, form a basis.

Let $\Omega \subset \mathbf{X}_s^+$ be an ideal such that $\mu \in \Omega$ is maximal; then $\Omega' := \Omega \setminus \{\mu\}$ is also an ideal. We have embeddings

$$\Gamma_{\Omega'} M \hookrightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega} M \hookrightarrow M,$$

and $\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M$ is a direct sum of copies of $\nabla(\mu)$. By Lemma 2.9, for $\pi \in e^{-1}(\mu)$ the morphism φ_{π}^M factors through a morphism $\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega} M} : \mathbb{T}(\mu) \rightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega} M$, and using also Lemma 2.10, if we consider the composition

$$\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M} : \mathbb{T}(\mu) \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega} M}} \Gamma_{\Omega} M \twoheadrightarrow \Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M,$$

then $(e^{-1}(\mu), e|_{e^{-1}(\mu)}, (\varphi_{\pi}^{\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M})_{\pi \in e^{-1}(\mu)})$ is a section of the ∇ -flag of the object $\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M$. By Lemma 3.9, the images of the corresponding morphisms

$$\varphi_{(\pi,0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M)} : \mathbb{T}(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M)$$

form a basis of $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), \mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M))$, and the images of the corresponding morphisms

$$\varphi_{(\pi,1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M)} : \mathbb{T}(\lambda^s) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M)$$

form a basis of $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda^s}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda^s), \mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M))$.

Now we have

$$(\mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_{\Omega'} M) : \nabla(\lambda)) = (\mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_{\Omega'} M) : \nabla(\lambda^s)) = 0$$

and

$$(\mathbb{T}_s(M / \Gamma_{\Omega} M) : \nabla(\lambda)) = (\mathbb{T}_s(M / \Gamma_{\Omega} M) : \nabla(\lambda^s)) = 0,$$

so that we have natural isomorphisms

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), \mathbb{T}_s M) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), \mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_{\Omega} M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M))$$

and

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda^s}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda^s), \mathbb{T}_s M) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda^s}}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda^s), \mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_\Omega M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M)).$$

Under these isomorphisms, the images of the morphisms $\varphi_{(\pi,0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$, resp. $\varphi_{(\pi,1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s M}$, correspond to the images of the morphisms $\varphi_{(\pi,0)}^{\mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_\Omega M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M)}$, resp. $\varphi_{(\pi,1)}^{\mathbb{T}_s(\Gamma_\Omega M / \Gamma_{\Omega'} M)}$. We deduce the expected properties of these morphisms, which concludes the proof. \square

3.5. Morphisms between “Bott–Samelson type” tilting modules. If $s \in S$, we will consider the “wall crossing” functor

$$\Theta_s := \mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}^s : \mathrm{Rep}_0(G) \rightarrow \mathrm{Rep}_0(G).$$

As in [EW2], an *expression* is a sequence $\underline{w} = (s_1, s_2, \dots, s_m)$ with $s_i \in S$. The length $\ell(\underline{w})$ is the number m of reflections appearing in this sequence. Omitting the underline denotes the product $s_1 \cdots s_m \in W$. We will often abuse notation and write expressions as $\underline{w} = s_1 \cdots s_m$, with the underline there to remind us that we consider an expression and not the product in W . An expression $\underline{w} = s_1 \cdots s_m$ is *reduced* if $\ell(\underline{w}) = \ell(w)$.

If $\underline{w} = s_1 \cdots s_m$ is an expression, we set

$$\mathbb{T}(\underline{w}) := \Theta_{s_m} \circ \cdots \circ \Theta_{s_1}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda_0)).$$

(Note the inversion in the order of the simple reflections.) This object is a tilting module in $\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)$. Note also that if \underline{w} is a reduced expression of an element $w \in {}^f W$, then $\mathbb{T}(\underline{w})$ contains $\mathbb{T}(w \bullet \lambda_0)$ as a direct summand (with multiplicity 1).

We will now derive from the results of §§3.3–3.4 some properties of the morphism spaces between such objects, which will play a crucial role in Section 5.

Proposition 3.10. *Let \underline{x} and \underline{v} be expressions, and assume that \underline{x} is a reduced expression for some element $x \in {}^f W$. Let also $\lambda = x \bullet \lambda_0$.*

- (1) *Assume that $\lambda \uparrow \lambda^s$ (so that $\underline{x}s$ is a reduced expression for $xs \in {}^f W$). Let $(f_i)_{i \in I}$ be a family of morphisms in $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$ whose images span the vector space $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$, and let $(g_j)_{j \in J}$ be a family of morphisms in $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$ whose images span the vector space $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda^s}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$. There exists morphisms $f'_i : \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) = \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s)$ (for $i \in I$) and $g'_j : \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s) = \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}ss)$ (for $j \in J$) such that the images of the compositions*

$$\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \xrightarrow{f'_i} \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \xrightarrow{\Theta_s(f_i)} \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}) = \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}s)$$

together with the images of the compositions

$$\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \xrightarrow{g'_j} \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s) \xrightarrow{\Theta_s(g_j)} \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}) = \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}s)$$

span $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}s))$.

- (2) *Assume that $\underline{x} = \underline{y}s$ for some \underline{y} which is a reduced expression for an element $y \in {}^f W$. (Then $\lambda^s = y \bullet \lambda_0 \in \mathbf{X}^+$, and $\lambda^s \uparrow \lambda$.) Let $(f_i)_{i \in I}$ be a family of morphisms in $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$ whose images span the vector space $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$, and let $(g_j)_{j \in J}$ be a family of morphisms in $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$ whose images span $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda^s}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$.*

There exists morphisms $f'_i: \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) = \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s)$ and $g'_j: \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{y}) = \mathbb{T}(\underline{x})$ such that the images of the compositions

$$\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \xrightarrow{f'_i} \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \xrightarrow{\Theta_s(f_i)} \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}) = \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}s)$$

together with the images of the compositions

$$\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \xrightarrow{g'_j} \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{y}) \xrightarrow{\Theta_s(g_j)} \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}) = \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}s)$$

span $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}s))$.

Proof. (1) We have $\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \cong \mathbb{T}(\lambda)$ in $\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}$, and $\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s) \cong \mathbb{T}(\lambda^s)$ in $\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda^s}$. Hence we can fix split embeddings $\mathbb{T}(\lambda) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}(\underline{x})$ and $\mathbb{T}(\lambda^s) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s)$ and assume that the compositions

$$\mathbb{T}(\lambda) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \xrightarrow{f_i} \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbb{T}(\lambda^s) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s) \xrightarrow{g_j} \mathbb{T}(\underline{v})$$

are part of a section of the ∇ -flag of $\mathbb{T}(\underline{v})$. Let $\mu \in \mathbf{X}_s^+$ be the unique element which belongs to the closures of the alcoves of λ and λ^s . Then Proposition 3.5 provides a section of the ∇ -flag of $\mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v})$ whose morphisms $\mathbb{T}(\mu) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v})$ are parametrized by $I \sqcup J$, in such a way that the morphism corresponding to $i \in I$ factors through the morphism $\mathbb{T}^s(f_i): \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v})$, and that the morphism corresponding to $j \in J$ factors through the morphism $\mathbb{T}^s(g_j): \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}^s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v})$ (see in particular Remark 3.4). Applying Proposition 3.8, we then obtain a section of the ∇ -flag of $\mathbb{T}(\underline{v}s) = \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v})$ whose morphisms $\mathbb{T}(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}s)$ are parametrized by $I \sqcup J$, in such a way that the morphism corresponding to $i \in I$ factors through the morphism $\Theta_s(f_i): \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v})$, and that the morphism corresponding to $j \in J$ factors through the morphism $\Theta_s(g_j): \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}s) \rightarrow \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v})$ (see in particular Remark 3.7). Composing with a fixed surjection $\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}(\lambda)$ we deduce the desired morphisms.

(2) The proof is identical to the proof of (1), and therefore omitted. \square

4. DIAGRAMMATIC HECKE CATEGORY AND THE ANTISPHERICAL MODULE

4.1. The affine Hecke algebra and the antispherical module. To the Coxeter groups (W, S) and (W_f, S_f) one can associate the Hecke algebras \mathcal{H} and \mathcal{H}_f over $\mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]$. We will follow the notation of [S4] rather closely: in particular \mathcal{H} has a “standard” basis $\{H_w : w \in W\}$ and a “Kazhdan–Lusztig” basis $\{\underline{H}_w : w \in W\}$, and \mathcal{H}_f identifies with the $\mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]$ -subalgebra spanned (as a $\mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]$ -module) by the element H_w for $w \in W_f$. If $\underline{w} = s_1 \cdots s_m$ is an expression, we set

$$\underline{H}_{\underline{w}} := \underline{H}_{s_1} \cdots \underline{H}_{s_m} \in \mathcal{H}.$$

The algebra \mathcal{H}_f has a natural “sign” right module sgn such that $\text{sgn} = \mathbb{Z}[v, v^{-1}]$, and H_s acts as multiplication by $-v$ for $s \in S_f$. Then we can consider the “antispherical” right \mathcal{H} -module defined as

$$\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}} := \text{sgn} \otimes_{\mathcal{H}_f} \mathcal{H}.$$

(This module is denoted \mathcal{N}^0 in [S4, §5].) This module has a “standard” basis $\{N_w : w \in {}^f W\}$, where $N_w = 1 \otimes H_w$ for $w \in {}^f W$, and a “Kazhdan–Lusztig” basis $\{\underline{N}_w : w \in {}^f W\}$, see [S4, Theorem 3.1]. Let $\varphi: \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$ be the morphism

of right \mathcal{H} -modules sending H to $1 \otimes H$. Then it is explained in [S4, Proof of Proposition 3.4] that

$$(4.1) \quad \varphi(\underline{H}_w) = \begin{cases} \underline{N}_w & \text{if } w \in {}^f W; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Recall also that if $s \in S$ and $w \in {}^f W$ then we have

$$(4.2) \quad N_w \cdot \underline{H}_s = \begin{cases} N_{ws} + vN_w & \text{if } ws \in {}^f W \text{ and } xs > x, \\ N_{ws} + v^{-1}N_w & \text{if } ws \in {}^f W \text{ and } xs < x, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

see [S4, p. 86]. The third case in this formula relies on the observation that, for $w \in {}^f W$ and $s \in S$,

$$(4.3) \quad ws \notin {}^f W \Rightarrow (\exists r \in S_f, ws = rw),$$

see [S4].

Fix an expression $\underline{w} = s_1 s_2 \cdots s_m$. A *subexpression*, denoted $\underline{e} \subset \underline{w}$, is a sequence $e_1 \cdots e_m$ with $e_i \in \{0, 1\}$. Its *end-point* is $\underline{w}^{\underline{e}} := s_1^{e_1} \cdots s_m^{e_m} \in W$; we will also say that \underline{e} *expresses* $\underline{w}^{\underline{e}}$. The *Bruhat stroll* of \underline{e} is the sequence

$$x_0 := \text{id}, x_1 := s_1^{e_1}, x_2 := s_1^{e_1} s_2^{e_2}, \dots, x_m := \underline{w}^{\underline{e}}$$

of element of W . To each index $i \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ we assign a symbol:

- U1 if $e_i = 1$ and $x_i = x_{i-1} s_i > x_{i-1}$;
- D1 if $e_i = 1$ and $x_i = x_{i-1} s_i < x_{i-1}$;
- U0 if $e_i = 0$ and $x_{i-1} s_i > x_{i-1}$;
- D0 if $e_i = 0$ and $x_{i-1} s_i < x_{i-1}$.

(Here “U” stands for Up, and “D” stands for Down.) The defect $d(\underline{e}) \in \mathbb{Z}$ of \underline{e} is the difference between the number of symbols U0 and the number of symbols D0 in this list (see e.g. [EW2, §2.4]).

Given subexpressions $\underline{e}', \underline{e}'' \subset \underline{w}$, denote their Bruhat strolls by x'_0, x'_1, \dots, x'_m and $x''_0, x''_1, \dots, x''_m$ respectively. We say that $\underline{e}' \leq \underline{e}''$ if $x'_i \leq x''_i$ in the Bruhat order for all $0 \leq i \leq m$. This gives a partial order on the set of subexpressions of \underline{w} which we call the *path dominance order* (see [EW2, §2.4]).

Finally, given a subset $K \subset W$ we will say that \underline{e} *avoids* K if

$$x_{i-1} s_i \notin K \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq m.$$

(In particular, this condition is automatically satisfied if $m = 0$.)

The following easy lemma is the analogue in our antispherical setting of [EW2, Lemma 2.10] (which is due to Deodhar).

Lemma 4.1. *For any expression \underline{w} , in $\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$ we have*

$$N_{\text{id}} \cdot \underline{H}_{\underline{w}} = \sum_{\substack{\underline{e} \subset \underline{w} \\ \underline{e} \text{ avoids } W \setminus {}^f W}} v^{d(\underline{e})} N_{\underline{w}^{\underline{e}}}.$$

Proof. The formula is obvious if $\ell(\underline{w}) = 0$. Now, let \underline{w} be an expression of length $m \geq 0$ and let $s \in S$. By induction and (4.2) we have

$$\begin{aligned}
N_{\text{id}} \cdot \underline{H}_{\underline{w}s} &= (N_{\text{id}} \cdot \underline{H}_{\underline{w}}) \cdot \underline{H}_s = \left(\sum_{\substack{\underline{e} \subset \underline{w} \\ \underline{e} \text{ avoids } W \setminus {}^f W}} v^{d(\underline{e})} N_{\underline{w}\underline{e}} \right) \cdot \underline{H}_s = \\
&= \sum_{\substack{\underline{e} \subset \underline{w}, \\ \underline{e} \text{ avoids } W \setminus {}^f W, \\ \underline{w}^{\underline{e}s} \in {}^f W, \underline{w}^{\underline{e}s} > \underline{w}^{\underline{e}}}} (v^{d(\underline{e})} N_{\underline{w}\underline{e}s} + v^{d(\underline{e})+1} N_{\underline{w}\underline{e}}) + \sum_{\substack{\underline{e} \subset \underline{w}, \\ \underline{e} \text{ avoids } W \setminus {}^f W, \\ \underline{w}^{\underline{e}s} \in {}^f W, \underline{w}^{\underline{e}s} < \underline{w}^{\underline{e}}}} (v^{d(\underline{e})} N_{\underline{w}\underline{e}s} + v^{d(\underline{e})-1} N_{\underline{w}\underline{e}}) \\
&= \sum_{\substack{\underline{e}' \subset \underline{w}s, \\ \underline{e}' \text{ avoids } W \setminus {}^f W, \\ \underline{w}^{\tau(\underline{e}')} s > \underline{w}^{\tau(\underline{e}')}}} v^{d(\underline{e}')} N_{(\underline{w}s)\underline{e}'} + \sum_{\substack{\underline{e}' \subset \underline{w}s, \\ \underline{e}' \text{ avoids } W \setminus {}^f W, \\ \underline{w}^{\tau(\underline{e}')} s < \underline{w}^{\tau(\underline{e}')}}} v^{d(\underline{e}')} N_{(\underline{w}s)\underline{e}'} \\
&= \sum_{\substack{\underline{e}' \subset \underline{w}s, \\ \underline{e}' \text{ avoids } W \setminus {}^f W}} v^{d(\underline{e}')} N_{(\underline{w}s)\underline{e}'}
\end{aligned}$$

where in the third line $\tau(\underline{e}') = e_1 \cdots e_m$ is the subexpression of \underline{w} obtained by omitting the last term. The lemma follows. \square

4.2. Diagrammatic Soergel bimodules. From now on in this section we fix a commutative ring \mathbb{K} . We set $\mathfrak{h} := \mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}\Phi$, and define for any $s \in S$ elements $\alpha_s \in \mathfrak{h}^* := \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}(\mathfrak{h}, \mathbb{K})$ and $\alpha_s^\vee \in \mathfrak{h}$ as follows:

- if $s \in S_f$, then α_s and α_s^\vee are the images in \mathfrak{h}^* and \mathfrak{h} of the simple coroot and simple root associated with s respectively;
- if $s \in S \setminus S_f$, then the image of s under the natural projection $W \rightarrow W_f$ is a reflection s_γ for some $\gamma \in \Phi^+$; we define α_s as the image in \mathfrak{h}^* of $-\gamma^\vee$, and α_s^\vee as the image in \mathfrak{h} of $-\gamma$.

(This notation might be misleading, but it will be abandoned very soon.) We make the following assumptions:

(4.4) the natural pairing $(\mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}\Phi) \times (\mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}\Phi^\vee) \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$ is a perfect pairing;

(4.5) for any $s \in S$, the morphisms $\alpha_s : \mathfrak{h} \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$ and $\alpha_s^\vee : \mathfrak{h}^* \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$ are surjective.

Assumption (4.4) is equivalent to requiring that the determinant of the Cartan matrix of the root system Φ is invertible in \mathbb{K} , and assumption (4.5) is clearly always satisfied if 2 is invertible in \mathbb{K} . Note also that if these assumptions hold for a commutative ring \mathbb{K} , then they hold for all commutative rings \mathbb{K}' which admit a ring morphism $\mathbb{K} \rightarrow \mathbb{K}'$.

Remark 4.2. In our main application of the results of this section, the ring \mathbb{K} will be the field \mathbb{k} of Section 3. In this case, the condition $p \geq h$ ensures that (4.5) holds, except when Φ is a (non empty) direct sum of root systems of type \mathbf{A}_1 . To ensure that (4.4) holds, we will assume that $p > h$.

The datum of \mathfrak{h} and the subsets $\{\alpha_s : s \in S\} \subset \mathfrak{h}^*$ and $\{\alpha_s^\vee : s \in S\} \subset \mathfrak{h}$ defines a realization of (W, S) over \mathbb{K} in the sense of [EW2, Definition 3.1]. (In fact it is easy to check that the technical condition in [EW2, (3.3)] is satisfied.). Moreover, this realization is balanced in the sense of [EW2, Definition 3.6]. The representation of W on \mathfrak{h} associated with this realization factors through the natural representation

of $W_{\mathfrak{f}}$. Finally, our assumption (4.5) precisely says that Demazure Surjectivity (see [EW2, Assumption 3.7]) holds for this realization. (This condition is necessary for the category \mathcal{D}_{BS} to be well behaved, see [EW2, Remark 5.5].) As in [EW2], we denote by R the symmetric algebra (over \mathbb{K}) of \mathfrak{h}^* . Our assumption (4.4) implies that

(4.6) R is generated, as a \mathbb{K} -algebra, by the images of the coroots α^\vee for $\alpha \in \Sigma$.

Let us consider the category associated with this realization as defined in [EW2, Definition 5.2]. In the present paper we will denote this category by \mathcal{D}_{BS} . (Here “BS” stands for “Bott–Samelson”; this category is denoted \mathcal{D} in [EW2].) We will consider \mathcal{D}_{BS} as a category endowed with a “shift of the grading” autoequivalence $\langle 1 \rangle$ (denoted (1) in [EW2]) rather than as a graded category; therefore this category has objects $B_{\underline{w}}\langle n \rangle$ parametrized by pairs consisting of an expression \underline{w} and an integer $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, and we have $(B_{\underline{w}}\langle n \rangle)\langle 1 \rangle = B_{\underline{w}}\langle n+1 \rangle$. We will write $B_{\underline{w}}$ instead of $B_{\underline{w}}\langle 0 \rangle$. The category \mathcal{D}_{BS} is monoidal, with product defined on objects by

$$(B_{\underline{v}}\langle n \rangle) \cdot (B_{\underline{w}}\langle m \rangle) = B_{\underline{vw}}\langle n+m \rangle,$$

where \underline{vw} is the concatenation of the expressions \underline{v} and \underline{w} .

As in [EW2] we will use diagrams to denote morphisms in \mathcal{D}_{BS} : a morphism in $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}}(B_{\underline{v}}\langle n \rangle, B_{\underline{w}}\langle m \rangle)$ is a \mathbb{K} -linear combination of certain equivalence classes of diagrams whose bottom has strands labeled by the simple reflections appearing in \underline{v} , and whose top has strands labeled by the simple reflections appearing in \underline{w} . (In particular, diagrams should be read from bottom to top.) Diagrammatically, the product corresponds to horizontal concatenation, and composition corresponds to vertical concatenation. The diagrams are constructed by (horizontal and vertical) concatenation of images under powers of $\langle 1 \rangle$ of 4 different types of generators:

- (1) morphisms $B_{\emptyset} \rightarrow B_{\emptyset}\langle \deg(f) \rangle$ for any homogeneous $f \in R$, represented diagrammatically as the diagram

$$f$$

with empty top and bottom;

- (2) the upper and lower dots $B_s \rightarrow B_{\emptyset}\langle 1 \rangle$ and $B_{\emptyset} \rightarrow B_s\langle 1 \rangle$ (for $s \in S$), represented diagrammatically as

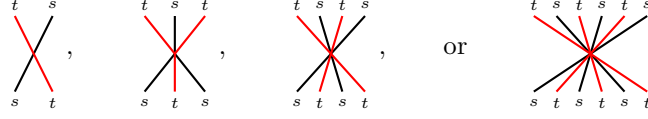
$$\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ | \\ s \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{c} s \\ | \\ \bullet \end{array};$$

- (3) the trivalent vertices $B_s \rightarrow B_{ss}\langle -1 \rangle$ and $B_{ss} \rightarrow B_s\langle -1 \rangle$ (again for $s \in S$), represented diagrammatically as

$$\begin{array}{c} s \quad s \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ | \\ s \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{c} s \\ | \\ s \quad s \end{array};$$

- (4) for pairs (s, t) of distinct elements of S such that st has finite order m_{st} in W , the $2m_{st}$ -valent vertex $B_{st\dots} \rightarrow B_{tst\dots}$ (where each index has m_{st} simple

reflections appearing), represented diagrammatically as



if $m_{s,t}$ is 2, 3, 4 or 6.

(The colors used in the diagrams has no particular significance: they are here only to make it easier to see which strands have the same label.) These generators satisfy a number of relations described in [EW2, §5], which we will not repeat here. These relations define the “equivalence relation” considered above; let us only recall that homotopic diagrams are equivalent.

Remark 4.3. Let $\alpha \in \Sigma$, and let $s = s_\alpha \in S_f$. By [EW2, (5.1)], the morphism associated with the image of α^\vee in $\mathfrak{h}^* \subset R$ as in (1) above is the composition

$$B_\emptyset \rightarrow B_s \langle 1 \rangle \rightarrow B_\emptyset \langle 2 \rangle$$

where the first morphism is the “lower dot” morphism for s and the second one is the shift by $\langle 1 \rangle$ of the “upper dot” morphism for s (see (2)). Therefore, by (4.6), the morphisms defined in (2), (3) and (4) are sufficient to generate all the morphisms in \mathcal{D}_{BS} .

For X, Y in \mathcal{D}_{BS} we set

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}}^\bullet(X, Y) := \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}}(X, Y \langle n \rangle).$$

This graded \mathbb{K} -module is a graded bimodule over R , where for $f \in R$ homogeneous and $\phi \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^\bullet(X, Y)$, the element $f \cdot \phi$, resp. $\phi \cdot f$, is the composition of the morphism

$$\begin{aligned} X = B_\emptyset \cdot X &\rightarrow (B_\emptyset \langle \deg(f) \rangle) \cdot X = X \langle \deg(f) \rangle, \\ \text{resp. } X = X \cdot B_\emptyset &\rightarrow X \cdot (B_\emptyset \langle \deg(f) \rangle) = X \langle \deg(f) \rangle, \end{aligned}$$

induced by the morphism in (1) above, with $\phi \langle \deg(f) \rangle$. (Of course, one can equivalently compose with the similar morphisms for Y .) It follows from [EW2, Corollary 6.13] that $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^\bullet(X, Y)$ is free of finite rank as a left R -module and as a right R -module.

The category \mathcal{D}_{BS} admits an autoequivalence

$$\iota: \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}$$

which sends the object $B_{s_1 \dots s_m} \langle n \rangle$ to $B_{s_m \dots s_1} \langle n \rangle$, and acts on a morphism corresponding to a diagram by reflecting this diagram along a vertical axis. This autoequivalence satisfies

$$\iota(X \cdot Y) = \iota(Y) \cdot \iota(X) \quad \text{for all } X, Y \text{ in } \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}.$$

There also exists a monoidal equivalence

$$\tau: \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{op}}$$

which sends $B_{\underline{w}} \langle n \rangle$ to $B_{\underline{w}} \langle -n \rangle$ and reflects diagrams along an horizontal axis; see [EW2, §6.3].

In the rest of this subsection we assume that \mathbb{K} is a complete local ring. In this case, we denote by \mathcal{D} the Karoubi envelope of the additive hull of \mathcal{D}_{BS} . (This

category is denoted $\text{Kar}(\mathcal{D})$ in [EW2].) Again this category is monoidal, and has an autoequivalence $\langle 1 \rangle$. By [EW2, Theorem 6.25], for any $w \in W$ there exists a unique indecomposable object B_w in \mathcal{D} which is a direct summand of $B_{\underline{w}}$ for any reduced expression \underline{w} for w , but is not a direct summand of any $B_{\underline{v}\langle n \rangle}$ with $\ell(\underline{v}) < \ell(\underline{w})$. Moreover, any indecomposable object in \mathcal{D} is isomorphic to $B_w\langle n \rangle$ for a unique pair $(w, n) \in W \times \mathbb{Z}$.

We define $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^{\bullet}(X, Y)$ in a similar way as for $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}}^{\bullet}(X, Y)$. We will again denote by ι the autoequivalence of \mathcal{D} induced by ι , and by τ the anti-autoequivalence of \mathcal{D} induced by τ . We have

$$\iota(B_w) = B_{w^{-1}}, \quad \tau(B_w) = B_w \quad \text{for all } w \in W.$$

In §2.1 we have considered the Serre quotient of an abelian category by a Serre subcategory. In the proof below (and in the rest of the section) we will consider another, more naive, notion of quotient of an additive category \mathcal{C} by a full additive subcategory \mathcal{C}' : we denote by \mathcal{C}/\mathcal{C}' the category which has the same objects as \mathcal{C} , and such that for M, N in \mathcal{C} the group $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}/\mathcal{C}'}(M, N)$ is the quotient of $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(M, N)$ by the subgroup of morphisms which factor through an object of \mathcal{C}' .

Lemma 4.4. *Let $\underline{w} = s_1 \cdots s_m$ be an expression. Any indecomposable summand $B_x\langle k \rangle$ of $B_{\underline{w}}$ satisfies $s_1 x < x$.*

Proof. Using the autoequivalence ι , it is equivalent to prove that any indecomposable summand $B_x\langle k \rangle$ of $B_{\underline{w}}$ satisfies $xs_m < x$; this is the statement we will actually prove.

Let us fix an indecomposable direct summand $B_x\langle k \rangle$ appearing in $B_{\underline{w}}$. Let $\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}$ be the quotient (in the sense explained just before the statement) of \mathcal{D} by the full subcategory whose objects are direct sums of object $B_y\langle j \rangle$ with $y < x$ in the Bruhat order. The “shift of the grading” functor $\langle 1 \rangle$ induces a similar functor on $\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}$, and we define $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}}^{\bullet}(-, -)$ as in \mathcal{D} . Let us fix some reduced expression \underline{x} for x ; then the images in $\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}$ of B_x and $B_{\underline{x}}$ coincide; in particular (the image of) $B_{\underline{x}}\langle k \rangle$ is a direct summand of (the image of) $B_{\underline{w}}$ in $\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}$, so that we have morphisms

$$B_{\underline{x}}\langle k \rangle \xrightarrow{f} B_{\underline{w}} \xrightarrow{g} B_{\underline{x}}\langle k \rangle$$

whose composition is $\text{id}_{B_{\underline{x}}\langle k \rangle}$ in $\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}$.

If

$$I_{\underline{x}} \subset \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{x}})$$

is the subspace considered in [EW2, §7.2], then it is clear that the canonical surjection $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{x}}) \twoheadrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{x}})$ factors through a surjection

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{x}})/I_{\underline{x}} \twoheadrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{x}}).$$

On the other hand, by [EW2, Proposition 7.6], any choice of “light leaves morphisms” $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}} \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{x}})$ (where \underline{e} runs over subexpressions of \underline{w} expressing x) provides a (graded) basis of $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{x}})/I_{\underline{x}}$ as a left R -module. In particular, the images of these morphisms generate $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{x}})$. We will fix a choice of such morphisms.

Now assume for a contradiction that $xs_m > x$. Then for any subexpression $\underline{e} \subset \underline{w}$ expressing x , the symbol associated with m as in §4.1 is either D1 or U0. It follows that, by construction, any light leaves morphism $B_{\underline{w}} \rightarrow B_{\underline{x}}\langle j \rangle$ (with $j \in \mathbb{Z}$) factors as a composition

$$B_{\underline{w}} \rightarrow B_{\underline{x}}B_{s_n}\langle j-1 \rangle \rightarrow B_{\underline{x}}\langle j \rangle,$$

where the second morphism is induced by the “upper dot” morphism $B_{s_m} \rightarrow B_{\emptyset}\langle 1 \rangle$. We deduce that this property holds for any morphism in $\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}$ from $B_{\underline{w}}$ to some shift of $B_{\underline{x}}$, and in particular for the image of g . We fix such a factorization.

The composition

$$B_{\underline{x}}\langle k \rangle \xrightarrow{f} B_{\underline{w}} \rightarrow B_{\underline{x}}B_{s_n}\langle k-1 \rangle$$

is nonzero in $\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}$, since its composition with the morphism $B_{\underline{x}}B_{s_n}\langle k-1 \rangle \rightarrow B_{\underline{x}}\langle k \rangle$ induced by the upper dot is non zero. However we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}}(B_{\underline{x}}\langle k \rangle, B_{\underline{x}s_n}\langle k-1 \rangle) &\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}}(B_{\underline{x}s_m}\langle 1-k \rangle, B_{\underline{x}}\langle -k \rangle) \\ &\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}}(B_{\underline{x}s_m}, B_{\underline{x}}\langle -1 \rangle), \end{aligned}$$

where the first isomorphism is induced by τ . As above $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{x}s_m}, B_{\underline{x}})$ is spanned by light leaves morphisms, and the only such morphism is of degree 1 (corresponding to the only subexpression of $\underline{x}s_m$ expressing x). Hence

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\geq x}}(B_{\underline{x}s_m}, B_{\underline{x}}\langle -1 \rangle) = 0,$$

which provides the desired contradiction. \square

4.3. Two lemmas on $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}$. Let \mathbb{K} be again an arbitrary commutative ring satisfying (4.4) and (4.5).

The following result is observed in [EW2, Equation (5.14)].

Lemma 4.5. *For $s \in S$, in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}$ we have $B_s \cdot B_s \cong B_s\langle 1 \rangle \oplus B_s\langle -1 \rangle$.*

Let us now recall the notion of “rex move” from [EW2, §4.2]. (Here, “rex” stands for “reduced expression”.) Consider an element $w \in W$, and define the *rex graph* Γ_w as the graph with vertices the reduced expressions for w and edges connecting reduced expressions if they differ by one application of a braid relation. By definition, if \underline{x} and \underline{y} are two reduced expressions for w , a *rex move* $\underline{x} \rightsquigarrow \underline{y}$ is a directed path in Γ_w from \underline{x} to \underline{y} . To such a path one can associate a morphism from $B_{\underline{x}}$ to $B_{\underline{y}}$ in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}$, obtained by composing the $2m_{st}$ -valent morphisms associated with all the braid relations encountered in this path.

Fix now two reduced expressions \underline{x} and \underline{y} for the same element, and consider a rex move $\underline{x} \rightsquigarrow \underline{y}$. Let us denote by $\gamma: B_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow B_{\underline{x}}$ the morphism associated with the concatenation $\underline{x} \rightsquigarrow \underline{y} \rightsquigarrow \underline{x}$, where the second portion is obtained by following the same path as the our original rex move, but in the reversed order.

Lemma 4.6. *There exists a finite set J and, for any $j \in J$, a morphism $\phi_j: B_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow B_{\underline{x}}$ which factors through an object of the form $B_{\underline{z}_j}\langle k_j \rangle$ where \underline{z}_j is obtained from \underline{x} by omitting at least 2 simple reflections (so that, in particular, $\ell(\underline{z}_j) \leq \ell(\underline{x}) - 2$), such that $\gamma = \mathrm{id}_{B_{\underline{x}}} + \sum_{j \in J} \phi_j$.*

Proof. Using induction on the length of the original rex move $\underline{x} \rightsquigarrow \underline{y}$, it suffices to prove the claim when this rex move consists of a single braid relation. In this case, this follows from the Jones–Wenzl idempotent relations (the last relations in [EW2, §1.4.2]) and the relation [EW2, (5.3)]. \square

4.4. Categorified antispherical module. As in §4.3, let \mathbb{K} be a commutative ring satisfying (4.4) and (4.5). We define the category $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}$ with objects $\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}\langle n \rangle$ parametrized by pairs consisting of an expression \underline{w} and an integer n , and with morphisms

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}\langle n \rangle, \overline{B}_{\underline{v}}\langle m \rangle)$$

defined as the quotient of $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}}(B_{\underline{w}}\langle n \rangle, B_{\underline{v}}\langle m \rangle)$ by the subspace spanned by the morphisms which factor through an object of the form $B_{\underline{u}}\langle k \rangle$ where \underline{u} starts with a simple reflection in S_{f} . There exists a natural functor

$$\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}$$

sending the object $B_{\underline{w}}$ to $\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}$, and the functor $\langle 1 \rangle$ induces a functor denoted similarly on $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}$.

As for objects of $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}$, for X, Y in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}$, we set

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}}^{\bullet}(X, Y) := \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}}(X, Y\langle n \rangle).$$

Let X, Y be objects of $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}$, and let \overline{X} and \overline{Y} be their images in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}$. Consider the natural (surjective) morphism

$$(4.7) \quad \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}}^{\bullet}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{X}, \overline{Y}).$$

Using Remark 4.3 we see that for any simple root α , with associated simple reflection $s = s_{\alpha} \in S_{\mathrm{f}}$, and any $f \in \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}}(X, Y\langle n \rangle)$, the morphism $\alpha^{\vee} \cdot f: X \rightarrow Y\langle n+2 \rangle$ (where by abuse we still denote by α^{\vee} the image of this coroot in R) factors through the object $B_s \cdot X\langle 1 \rangle$. Hence the image of this morphism in $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{X}, \overline{Y})$ vanishes. From this remark we deduce that (4.7) factors through the natural surjection

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}}^{\bullet}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathbb{K} \otimes_R \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}}^{\bullet}(X, Y)$$

(where \mathbb{K} is considered as the trivial R -module). Since $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}}^{\bullet}(X, Y)$ is finitely generated as a left R -module (see §4.2), it follows that $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{X}, \overline{Y})$ is a finitely generated \mathbb{K} -module.

In the case when \mathbb{K} is a complete local ring, we set

$$\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{asph}} = \mathcal{D} // \mathcal{D}_{W \setminus {}^{\mathrm{f}}W},$$

where $\mathcal{D}_{W \setminus {}^{\mathrm{f}}W}$ is the additive full subcategory of \mathcal{D} whose objects are the direct sums of objects $B_w\langle n \rangle$ where $w \notin {}^{\mathrm{f}}W$. If $w \in {}^{\mathrm{f}}W$, we will denote by \overline{B}_w the image of B_w under the canonical functor $\mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{asph}}$. Then the objects $\overline{B}_w\langle n \rangle$ with $w \in {}^{\mathrm{f}}W$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ are precisely the indecomposable objects in $\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{asph}}$. It follows from Lemma 4.4 that $\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{asph}}$ is the Karoubi envelope of the additive hull of $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}$.

4.5. Morphisms in the categorified antispherical module. Let \mathbb{K} be again an arbitrary commutative ring satisfying (4.4) and (4.5). Let us consider again the “light leaves morphisms” that we encountered (when \mathbb{K} is complete local) in the proof of Lemma 4.4, now in the special case of the empty expression. More precisely, let \underline{w} be any expression. Then, in this special case, the light leaves morphisms are certain morphisms $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}: B_{\underline{w}} \rightarrow B_{\emptyset}\langle k \rangle$, parametrized by the set of subexpressions $\underline{e} \subset \underline{w}$ expressing id, and which form a basis of the left R -module $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset})$ (see [EW2, Proposition 6.12]). The construction of these morphisms is explained in [EW2, §6.1]; it depends on some choices. In particular, if x_0, x_1, \dots, x_m is the Bruhat stroll associated with \underline{e} (as in §4.1), then the construction depends on the choice of reduced expressions $\underline{x}_0, \underline{x}_1, \dots, \underline{x}_m$ for these elements. (In our case $x_0 = x_m = \mathrm{id}$, so that we necessarily have $\underline{x}_0 = \underline{x}_m = \emptyset$.)

The main result of this subsection is the following counterpart of [EW2, Proposition 6.12] for $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathrm{asph}}$.

Proposition 4.7. *For any expression \underline{w} , the light leaves morphisms $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$ can be chosen in such a way that the \mathbb{K} -module $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$ is spanned by the images of the morphisms $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$ where \underline{e} is a subexpression of \underline{w} expressing id and avoiding $W \setminus {}^f W$.*

Remark 4.8. It will follow from Theorem 11.13 below (and its proof) that the morphisms considered in Proposition 4.7 actually form a *basis* of the \mathbb{K} -module $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$ in many cases, see §11.5. However, we don't know any “diagrammatic” proof of this fact, and it will not be needed for our applications below.

Proof. Recall the *path dominance order* on the set of subexpressions of \underline{w} defined in §4.1. First we explain how to choose the morphisms $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$ in such a way that

$$(4.8) \quad \begin{aligned} & \text{if } \underline{e} \text{ does not avoid } W \setminus {}^f W, \text{ then the image of } L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}} \text{ in} \\ & \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset}) \text{ is a linear combination of images of morphisms} \\ & L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}'} \text{ for subexpressions } \underline{e}' \subset \underline{w} \text{ expressing id and satisfying } \underline{e}' < \underline{e}. \end{aligned}$$

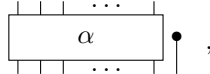
We will see later that this condition is sufficient to ensure that the conclusion of the proposition holds.

Let $\underline{e} \subset \underline{w}$ be a subexpression expressing id. If \underline{e} avoids $W \setminus {}^f W$, we choose $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$ arbitrarily. Now, let us assume that \underline{e} does not avoid $W \setminus {}^f W$. By definition, with the notation used in §4.1, there exists $i \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ such that $x_{i-1}s_i \notin {}^f W$; we fix such an index once and for all.

If the symbol assigned to i is D1 or U1 (so that in particular $x_i = x_{i-1}s_i$), then in the construction of the light leaves morphism corresponding to \underline{e} (as illustrated in [EW2, Figure 2]), at the i -th step we choose the rex move “ α ” in such a way that it passes through a reduced expression for $x_{i-1}s_i$ starting with a reflection in S_f . (All the other choices can be arbitrary.) Then $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$ factors through an object of the form $B_s \cdot X$ with $s \in S_f$, hence it vanishes in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}$; a fortiori it satisfies the desired property.

If the symbol assigned to i as in §4.1 is D0 (so that in particular $x_{i-1}s_i < x_{i-1}$, which implies that $x_{i-1} \notin {}^f W$, see (4.3)), then at the i -th step we choose the rex move “ β ” (again with the notation of [EW2, Figure 2]) such that it passes through a reduced expression for x_{i-1} starting with a reflection in S_f . Then as above $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$ vanishes in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}$, which proves the claim.

Finally, consider the case where the symbol assigned to i is U0. Then we choose $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$ arbitrarily. Using once again the notation of [EW2, Figure 2], at the i -th step of the construction the morphism looks like



where the top is a reduced expression \underline{x}_i for $x_i = x_{i-1}s_i$, and the bottom is of the form $\underline{x}_{i-1}s_i$ where \underline{x}_{i-1} is a reduced expression for x_{i-1} . Let us choose a reduced expression \underline{y} for $x_{i-1}s_i$ starting with an element in S_f and a rex move $\underline{x}_{i-1}s_i \rightsquigarrow \underline{y}$. Consider the “reversed” rex move $\underline{y} \rightsquigarrow \underline{x}_{i-1}s_i$, and denote by $\gamma: B_{\underline{x}_{i-1}s_i} \rightarrow B_{\underline{x}_{i-1}s_i}$ the morphism associated with the concatenation $\underline{x}_{i-1}s_i \rightsquigarrow \underline{y} \rightsquigarrow \underline{x}_{i-1}s_i$.

By Lemma 4.6, in \mathcal{D}_{BS} we have

$$(4.9) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ \alpha \end{array} \bullet = \begin{array}{c} \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ \alpha \\ \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ \gamma \end{array} \bullet + \sum_{j \in J} \begin{array}{c} \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ \alpha \\ \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ M_j \end{array}$$

where J is a finite set and for any $j \in J$, M_j is a homogeneous element in $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{x}_{i-1}s_i}, B_{\underline{x}_{i-1}})$ which factors through a shift of an object $B_{\underline{z}_j}$ where \underline{z}_j is an expression with $\ell(\underline{z}_j) < \ell(\underline{x}_{i-1}) = \ell(\underline{x}_{i-1}s_i) - 1$. Performing the other steps of the construction of $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$, we obtain that this morphism can be written as a sum of morphisms of the form

$$(4.10) \quad \begin{array}{c} \emptyset \\ \hline L'' \\ \hline \begin{array}{|c|c|} \hline ? & \\ \hline L' \cdot \text{id}_{B_i} & I \\ \hline \end{array} \\ \hline \underline{w} \end{array}$$

where I denotes the identity on the object $B_{(s_{i+1}, \dots, s_m)}$, L' and L'' are homogeneous elements in $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}}^{\bullet}(B_{(s_1, \dots, s_{i-1})}, B_{\underline{x}_{i-1}})$ and $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}}^{\bullet}(B_{(\underline{x}_i, s_{i+1}, \dots, s_m)}, B_{\emptyset})$ respectively, and the question mark takes as values all the morphisms appearing in the right-hand side of (4.9).

As above, the morphism involving γ vanishes in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}$, hence using Lemma 4.9 below we obtain that the image of $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$ in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}$ coincides with the image of a linear combination of morphisms $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}'}$ with $\underline{e}' < \underline{e}$, and the proof of (4.8) is complete.

Now we prove that, with this choice of light leaves morphisms, the statement of the proposition holds. For this it suffices to prove, by induction on the path dominance order, that the image of $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$ belongs to the span of the images of the morphisms $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}'}$ where \underline{e}' avoids $W \setminus {}^f W$.

The path dominance order on subexpressions of \underline{w} expressing id has a unique minimum, namely $\underline{e}_{\min} := 00 \cdots 0$. Moreover, the morphism $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}_{\min}}$ is a sequence of upper dots. If \underline{e}_{\min} avoids $W \setminus {}^f W$ there is nothing to prove, and if \underline{e}_{\min} does not avoid $W \setminus {}^f W$, i.e. if $s_i \in S_f$ for some $i \in \{1, \dots, m\}$, then $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}_{\min}}$ factors through B_{s_i} (since we can “pull” the corresponding dot above all the other dots), hence vanishes in $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$.

Now let \underline{e} be arbitrary. If \underline{e} avoids $W \setminus {}^f W$ there is nothing to prove. And if \underline{e} does not avoid $W \setminus {}^f W$ then by (4.8) the image of $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}}$ is a linear combination of images of light leaves morphisms corresponding to subexpressions which are strictly smaller than \underline{e} , and induction allows to conclude. \square

Lemma 4.9. *For any $j \in J$, the morphism (4.10) (in \mathcal{D}_{BS}) obtained from the diagram*

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ \alpha \\ \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \text{---} | \\ M_j \end{array}$$

of (4.9) belongs to the R -span of the morphisms $L_{\underline{w}, \underline{f}}$ with $\underline{f} < \underline{e}$ in the path dominance order (for any choice of the latter morphisms).

Proof. We denote by N_j the morphism under consideration.

Let \mathcal{D}_Q be the Karoubi envelope of the category obtained from \mathcal{D}_{BS} by tensoring all Hom spaces by Q , the localization of R at all roots. (This category is denoted $Kar(\mathcal{D}_Q)$ in [EW2, §5.4]). In \mathcal{D}_Q we have objects $Q_{\underline{w}}$ for any expression \underline{w} , see [EW2, §5.4]. (Up to isomorphism, $Q_{\underline{w}}$ depends only on w .) After choosing, for any $s \in S$, a decomposition of the image of B_s in \mathcal{D}_Q as the direct sum $Q_{\emptyset} \oplus Q_s$ (e.g. as in [EW2, Equation (5.24)]), the image of $B_{\underline{w}}$ splits canonically into a direct sum of objects $Q_{\underline{f}}$ parametrized by all subexpressions $\underline{f} \subset \underline{w}$. (Here by abuse we denote by $Q_{\underline{f}}$ the object $Q_{\underline{x}}$ where \underline{x} is the expression obtained by omitting from \underline{w} the indices k such that $f_k = 0$.) Write $i_{\underline{f}}: Q_{\underline{f}} \rightarrow B_{\underline{w}}$ for the inclusion of this summand in \mathcal{D}_Q . For any subexpression \underline{f} of \underline{x} expressing id we can write

$$N_j \circ i_{\underline{f}} = q_{\underline{f}} \cdot \text{can}_{\underline{f}}$$

where $\text{can}_{\underline{f}}$ is the canonical isomorphism $Q_{\underline{f}} \xrightarrow{\sim} Q_{\emptyset}$ and $q_{\underline{f}} \in Q$.

We claim that

$$(4.11) \quad q_{\underline{f}} = 0 \text{ unless } \underline{f} < \underline{e}.$$

In fact this follows from the same arguments as in [EW2, Proposition 6.6]. Fix some subexpression \underline{f} expressing id , and let x'_0, \dots, x'_m denote the corresponding Bruhat stroll. For any $k \in \{1, \dots, m\}$, by construction of the light leaves morphisms, N_j factors through a morphism of the form $P_k \cdot \text{id}_{B_{(s_{k+1}, \dots, s_m)}}$, where P_k is a morphism from $B_{(s_1, \dots, s_k)}$ to $B_{\underline{x}_k}$. If $\underline{f}_{\leq k} := (f_1, \dots, f_k)$, then P_k vanishes on $Q_{\underline{f}_{\leq k}}$ unless $x'_k \leq x_k$; a fortiori, N_j vanishes on $Q_{\underline{f}}$ unless $x'_k \leq x_k$. This implies already that $q_{\underline{f}} = 0$ unless $\underline{f} \leq \underline{e}$. Now in the special case $k = i$, we use the fact that M_j factors through an object $B_{\underline{z}_j}$ with $\ell(\underline{z}_j) < \ell(\underline{x}_{i-1})$ to factor N_j through a morphism of the form $P_i \cdot \text{id}_{B_{(s_{i+1}, \dots, s_m)}}$ where P_i is a morphism from $B_{(s_1, \dots, s_i)}$ to $B_{\underline{z}_j}$. Then P_i vanishes on $Q_{\underline{f}_{\leq i}}$ unless $\ell(x'_i) \leq \ell(\underline{z}_j) < \ell(x_{i-1}) = \ell(x_i)$, which shows that $q_{\underline{e}} = 0$, and the proof of (4.11) is complete.

Now we can conclude: applying [EW2, Proposition 6.12] we can write

$$N_j = \sum a_{\underline{e}'} \cdot L_{\underline{w}, \underline{e}'}$$

where the sum is over subexpressions $\underline{e}' \subset \underline{x}$ expressing id , and $a_{\underline{e}'} \in Q$. Comparing the property (4.11) with the “path dominance upper-triangularity” of light leaves morphisms, see [EW2, Proposition 6.6], we obtain that $a_{\underline{e}'} = 0$ unless $\underline{e}' < \underline{e}$. The proposition follows. \square

5. MAIN CONJECTURE AND CONSEQUENCES

5.1. Statement of the conjecture. Now we come back to the setting of Section 3. In particular, \mathbb{k} is an algebraically closed field of characteristic p . In order to be able to also use the results of Section 4, we assume from now on that $p > h$; see Remark 4.2.

Note that, for $s \in S$, any choice of an adjunction (T^s, T_s) defines morphisms $\text{id} \rightarrow T_s T^s$ and $T^s T_s \rightarrow \text{id}$, hence morphisms $\text{id} \rightarrow \Theta_s$ and $\Theta_s \Theta_s \rightarrow \Theta_s$ (by composing the second morphism on the right with T^s and on the left with T_s).

Similarly, any choice of an adjunction $(\mathbb{T}_s, \mathbb{T}^s)$ defines morphisms $\Theta_s \rightarrow \text{id}$ and $\Theta_s \rightarrow \Theta_s \Theta_s$.

Our conjecture roughly states that the category \mathcal{D}_{BS} acts on the right on the category $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ via the wall-crossing functors Θ_s . More formally, this conjecture can be stated as follows.

Conjecture 5.1. *There exists, for any $s \in S$, functors*

$$\mathbb{T}^s: \text{Rep}_0(G) \rightarrow \text{Rep}_s(G) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbb{T}_s: \text{Rep}_s(G) \rightarrow \text{Rep}_0(G)$$

isomorphic to the translations functors $T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s}$ and $T_{\mu_s}^{\lambda_0}$ respectively, together with adjunctions $(\mathbb{T}^s, \mathbb{T}_s)$ and $(\mathbb{T}_s, \mathbb{T}^s)$ and, for any pair (s, t) of distinct elements in S such that $st \in W$ has finite order m_{st} , a morphism

$$(5.1) \quad \underbrace{\Theta_s \Theta_t \cdots}_{m_{st}} \rightarrow \underbrace{\Theta_t \Theta_s \cdots}_{m_{st}},$$

such that the assignment defined by $B_s \langle n \rangle \mapsto \Theta_s$ for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and sending

- *the upper and lower dots to the morphisms*

$$\Theta_s \rightarrow \text{id} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{id} \rightarrow \Theta_s$$

defined by the adjunctions $(\mathbb{T}_s, \mathbb{T}^s)$ and $(\mathbb{T}^s, \mathbb{T}_s)$ respectively;

- *the trivalent vertices to the morphisms*

$$\Theta_s \rightarrow \Theta_s \Theta_s \quad \text{and} \quad \Theta_s \Theta_s \rightarrow \Theta_s$$

defined by the adjunctions $(\mathbb{T}_s, \mathbb{T}^s)$ and $(\mathbb{T}^s, \mathbb{T}_s)$ respectively;

- *the $2m_{st}$ -valent vertex to (5.1)*

defines a right action of \mathcal{D}_{BS} on $\text{Rep}_0(G)$.

Remark 5.2. (1) We stated the conjecture in terms of an action on the category $\text{Rep}_0(G)$. But in fact this statement is equivalent to the similar statement where the categories $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ and $\text{Rep}_s(G)$ are replaced by the subcategories $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ and $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_s(G))$. For instance, if we have defined a functor

$$\tilde{\mathbb{T}}^s: \text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G)) \rightarrow \text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_s(G))$$

isomorphic to the functor induced by $T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s}$, then one can consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K^b \text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G)) & \xrightarrow{K^b(\tilde{\mathbb{T}}^s)} & K^b \text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_s(G)) \\ \wr \downarrow & & \downarrow \wr \\ D^b \text{Rep}_0(G) & \longrightarrow & D^b \text{Rep}_s(G) \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are the canonical equivalences and the lower horizontal arrow is defined in such a way that the diagram commutes. Here $K^b(\tilde{\mathbb{T}}^s)$ is isomorphic to $K^b(T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s})$, hence the lower arrow is isomorphic to $D^b(T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s})$; in particular it is exact, hence it induces a functor $\mathbb{T}^s: \text{Rep}_0(G) \rightarrow \text{Rep}_s(G)$ isomorphic to $T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s}$. Similar remarks apply to the functor \mathbb{T}_s and to the morphisms between the compositions of these functors.

- (2) As explained in Remark 4.3, to define the action we do not need to specify the image of the morphisms $B_\emptyset \rightarrow B_\emptyset \langle \deg(f) \rangle$ associated with homogeneous elements $f \in R$; they are determined by the other morphisms.

- (3) In the proof of Theorem 5.3 below, we will not use the fact that the morphisms $\Theta_s \rightarrow \text{id}$, $\text{id} \rightarrow \Theta_s$, $\Theta_s \rightarrow \Theta_s \Theta_s$, $\Theta_s \Theta_s \rightarrow \Theta_s$ are induced by adjunction, nor that the functors Θ_s can be written as a composite $\mathsf{T}_s \mathsf{T}^s$. (We will only use the fact that Θ_s is isomorphic to a composite $T_{\mu_s}^{\lambda_0} T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_s}$.) We added these requirements in the conjecture since it is the most natural way to construct these morphisms, and since they automatically imply that certain relations hold (see (4) below). But removing these conditions one can formulate a version of Conjecture 5.1 which is only in terms of the regular block $\text{Rep}_0(G)$.
- (4) To prove the conjecture, the task is clear: one needs to choose the functors T^s and T_s and the appropriate adjunctions, together with the morphisms (5.1), and then check that the relations of [EW2, Definition 5.2] are satisfied (with [EW2, (5.1)] omitted, and “ f ” replaced by the composition of a lower dot and an upper dot in [EW2, (5.2)]). The relations [EW2, (5.3) and (5.4)] follow immediately from the fact that our morphisms are induced by some adjunctions. So, the first non-trivial relations one needs to consider are relations [EW2, (5.2) and (5.5)].
- (5) The statement of the conjecture depends on the choice of the weights λ_0 and μ_s ($s \in S$). It is likely that the statements for different choices are equivalent, although we were not able to prove this fact. Anyway, at the level of characters (see (1.5)), the statement only depends on λ_0 , and it is well known that the formulas for different choices of λ_0 are all equivalent.
- (6) The relations defining \mathcal{D}_{BS} are “local” in the sense that they involve at most 3 different simple reflections. However, the conjecture also has some “global” flavor since before considering the relations we first need to define the adjunctions and the morphisms (5.1) “globally”; they cannot vary when we change the subset of cardinality ≤ 3 containing the simple reflections under consideration.
- (7) It will be convenient for us (to simplify the comparison of labelings) to require that the action of \mathcal{D}_{BS} is a *right* action. However, using the autoequivalence ι of §4.2, we see that it is equivalent to construct a right or a left action.

5.2. Tilting modules and antispherical Soergel bimodules. The rest of this section is devoted to the study of the implications of Conjecture 5.1 on the structure of the category $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$. More precisely, we will prove the following theorem (already stated in a slightly different form in §1.3).

Theorem 5.3. *Assume that Conjecture 5.1 holds. Then there exists an additive functor*

$$\Psi: \mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}} \rightarrow \text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$$

and an isomorphism $\zeta: \Psi \circ \langle 1 \rangle \xrightarrow{\sim} \Psi$ which satisfy the following properties:

- (1) *for any X, Y in $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$, Ψ and ζ induce an isomorphism of \mathbb{k} -vector spaces*

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}^{\bullet}(X, Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\Psi(X), \Psi(Y));$$

- (2) *for any $w \in {}^f W$, $\Psi(\overline{B}_w) \cong \mathbb{T}(w \bullet \lambda_0)$.*

Theorem 5.3 can be understood as stating that the category $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ is a “graded version” of the category $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$; see [S1] for more details on this point of view.

The next subsections (until §5.5) are devoted to the proof of Theorem 5.3. In §§5.2–5.5 we assume that Conjecture 5.1 holds, in other words that we have constructed a right action of \mathcal{D}_{BS} on $\text{Rep}_0(G)$. This assumption allows to consider the functor

$$\tilde{\Psi}: \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}} \rightarrow \text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$$

defined by

$$\tilde{\Psi}(B) := \mathbb{T}(\lambda_0) \cdot B.$$

By construction there exists a natural isomorphism $\tilde{\Psi} \circ \langle 1 \rangle \cong \tilde{\Psi}$. Moreover, using the notation from §3.5, for any expression \underline{w} we have $\mathbb{T}(\underline{w}) = \tilde{\Psi}(B_{\underline{w}})$. Finally, since the category $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ is Karoubian, the functor $\tilde{\Psi}$ factors through a functor $\mathcal{D} \rightarrow \text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$, which we will denote similarly.

Recall the notion of a “rex move” considered in §4.3. Later we will need the following property of the image under $\tilde{\Psi}$ of these morphisms.

Lemma 5.4. *Let \underline{x} and \underline{y} be reduced expressions for the same element $w \in {}^fW$, and consider a rex move $\underline{x} \rightsquigarrow \underline{y}$. Let also $\lambda := w \bullet \lambda_0$. The image under $\tilde{\Psi}$ of the associated morphism $B_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow B_{\underline{y}}$ is invertible in $\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}$.*

Proof. Denote by $\phi_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}: B_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow B_{\underline{y}}$ the rex move morphism under consideration, and by $\phi_{\underline{y}, \underline{x}}: B_{\underline{y}} \rightarrow B_{\underline{x}}$ the morphism associated with the “reversed” rex move as in §4.3. Then by Lemma 4.6 we have

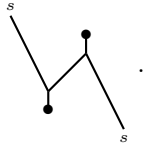
$$\phi_{\underline{y}, \underline{x}} \circ \phi_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}} = \text{id}_{B_{\underline{x}}} + f_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}},$$

where $f_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}$ is a sum of morphisms which factor through various objects $B_{\underline{x}'} \langle k \rangle$ where \underline{x}' is an expression with $\ell(\underline{x}') < \ell(\underline{x})$. Hence the image of $\tilde{\Psi}(\phi_{\underline{y}, \underline{x}}) \circ \tilde{\Psi}(\phi_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}})$ in $\text{End}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}))$ is the identity morphism. Similarly, the image of $\tilde{\Psi}(\phi_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}) \circ \tilde{\Psi}(\phi_{\underline{y}, \underline{x}})$ in $\text{End}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}))$ is the identity morphism, which shows that the image of $\tilde{\Psi}(\phi_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}})$ in $\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}$ is an isomorphism (with inverse the image of $\tilde{\Psi}(\phi_{\underline{y}, \underline{x}})$), and finishes the proof. \square

To conclude this subsection we note the following easy fact.

Lemma 5.5. *Let $M \in \text{Rep}_0(G)$, and assume that $\Theta_s(M) \neq 0$. Then the morphism $M \rightarrow \Theta_s(M)$ obtained as the image under our action of the “lower dot” morphism $B_{\emptyset} \rightarrow B_s \langle 1 \rangle$ (applied to M) is nonzero.*

Proof. If the morphism under consideration vanishes, then so does the image under our action of the morphism



However, this morphism is equal to id_{B_s} (by the “zigzag relation”), hence its image is $\text{id}_{\Theta_s(M)}$, which does not vanish by assumption. \square

Remark 5.6. Of course, if we use the fact that $\Theta_s = \mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}^s$ and that the image of the lower dot morphism is induced by adjunction, then Lemma 5.5 is obvious.

5.3. Surjectivity. For two expressions \underline{x} and \underline{y} , we denote by

$$\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{x}}, B_{\underline{y}}) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{y}))$$

the morphism induced by $\tilde{\Psi}$. If \underline{x} is a reduced expression for an element $x \in {}^fW$, and if $\lambda := x \bullet \lambda_0$, we also denote by

$$\beta_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{x}}, B_{\underline{y}}) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{y}))$$

the composition of $\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}$ with the morphism induced by the quotient functor to $\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}$.

Proposition 5.7. *Let \underline{x} and \underline{y} be expressions, and assume that \underline{x} is a reduced expression for some element $x \in {}^fW$. Then the morphism $\beta_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}$ is surjective.*

Before proving the proposition in general, we consider some special cases.

Lemma 5.8. *Let \underline{y} be a reduced expression for an element $y \in {}^fW$, and let $s \in S$ be a simple reflection such that $ys > y$ in the Bruhat order and $ys \in {}^fW$. Then the morphisms $\beta_{\underline{ys}, \underline{ys}}$, $\beta_{\underline{ys}, \underline{y}}$, $\beta_{\underline{y}, \underline{ys}}$ and $\beta_{\underline{y}, \underline{y}}$ are surjective.*

Proof. By Lemma 4.5, in \mathcal{D}_{BS} we have $B_{\underline{y}ss} \cong B_{\underline{y}s}\langle 1 \rangle \oplus B_{\underline{y}s}\langle -1 \rangle$. We deduce a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{x}}, B_{\underline{y}ss}) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \text{Hom}^{\bullet-1}(B_{\underline{x}}, B_{\underline{y}s}) \oplus \text{Hom}^{\bullet+1}(B_{\underline{x}}, B_{\underline{y}s}) \\ \alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}ss} \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}s} \oplus \alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}s} \\ \text{Hom}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{y}ss)) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \text{Hom}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{y}s)) \oplus \text{Hom}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{y}s)) \end{array}$$

where \underline{x} is either \underline{y} or \underline{ys} . This remark reduces the claim to the cases of $\beta_{\underline{ys}, \underline{ys}}$ and $\beta_{\underline{y}, \underline{ys}}$. The case of $\beta_{\underline{ys}, \underline{ys}}$ is obvious since

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{ys}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{ys})) = \mathbb{k} \cdot \text{id}$$

(where here $\lambda = ys \bullet \lambda_0$). So, only the surjectivity of $\beta_{\underline{y}, \underline{ys}}$ remains to be proved.

To simplify notation, we now set $\lambda = y \bullet \lambda_0$, and we fix a non-zero morphism $f: \Delta(\lambda) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}(\underline{y})$. (Such a morphism is unique up to scalar.) Then we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta(\lambda) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \Theta_s \Delta(\lambda) \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow \Theta_s(f) \\ \mathbb{T}(\underline{y}) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \mathbb{T}(\underline{ys}), \end{array}$$

where both horizontal maps are induced by the image of the “lower dot” morphism of \mathcal{D}_{BS} . The image of f in $\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}$ is an isomorphism, so that we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{ys})) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), \mathbb{T}(\underline{ys}))$$

Now since $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), \text{cok}(\Theta_s(f))) = 0$, the morphism $\Theta_s(f)$ induces an isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), \mathbb{T}(\underline{ys})) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), \Theta_s \Delta(\lambda)).$$

Moreover, by Lemma 3.2, the vector space $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow \lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), \Theta_s \Delta(\lambda))$ is one-dimensional, and the image of the lower dot morphism in this space coincides with

the image of the lower dot morphism in $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{ys}))$ under the composed isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{ys})) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), \Theta_s \Delta(\lambda)).$$

Hence to conclude it suffices to prove that the image of the “lower dot” morphism in $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\Delta(\lambda), \Theta_s \Delta(\lambda))$ does not vanish. This fact follows from Lemma 3.2 and Lemma 5.5. \square

Proof of Proposition 5.7. We will prove by induction on $\ell(\underline{y})$ that the statement holds for all reduced expressions \underline{x} . First, assume that $\ell(\underline{y}) = 0$. Then $\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}) = \mathbb{T}(\emptyset) = \mathbb{T}(\lambda_0)$, and

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\emptyset)) = 0$$

unless $\underline{x} = \emptyset$, in which case the claim is obvious since

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda_0}}(\mathbb{T}(\emptyset), \mathbb{T}(\emptyset)) = \mathbb{k} \cdot \text{id}.$$

Now let \underline{y} be an expression such that $\ell(\underline{y}) > 0$. Write $\underline{y} = \underline{v}s$ where $s \in S$, so that $\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}) = \Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v})$, and assume that the result is known for \underline{v} . As in the statement, let also \underline{x} be a reduced expression for an element $x \in {}^f W$, and let $\lambda := x \bullet \lambda_0$. We distinguish three cases.

Case 1: $\lambda^s \notin \mathbf{X}^+$. In this case we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{y})) = 0$$

since $(\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}) : \nabla(\lambda)) = (\Theta_s \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}) : \nabla(\lambda)) = 0$ by Lemma 3.3, and there is nothing to prove.

Case 2: $\lambda^s \in \mathbf{X}^+$ and $\lambda^s \uparrow \lambda$. In this case $xs < x$ in the Bruhat order, so that x has a reduced expression ending with s , and $xs \in {}^f W$. Using Lemma 5.4, we can assume that $\underline{x} = \underline{u}s$ for some word \underline{u} which is a reduced expression for xs . By induction, there exists a family $(f_i)_{i \in I}$ of elements in the image of $\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{v}}$ whose image spans $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$, and a family $(g_j)_{j \in J}$ of elements in the image of $\alpha_{\underline{u}, \underline{v}}$ whose image spans $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda^s}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{u}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$. Then by Proposition 3.10(2) there exists morphisms $f'_i : \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}(\underline{xs})$ and $g'_j : \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}(\underline{us}) = \mathbb{T}(\underline{x})$ such that the images of the compositions

$$(5.2) \quad \Theta_s(f_i) \circ f'_i \quad \text{and} \quad \Theta_s(g_j) \circ g'_j$$

span $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{y}))$. By Lemma 5.8 (applied to the reduced expression \underline{u}) the morphisms $\beta_{\underline{x}, \underline{x}}$ and $\beta_{\underline{x}, \underline{xs}}$ are surjective; hence we can assume that the morphisms f'_i are in the image of $\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{xs}}$, and that the morphisms g'_j are in the image of $\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{x}}$. Then all the morphisms in (5.2) are in the image of $\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}$, and the proof is complete in this case.

Case 3: $\lambda \uparrow \lambda^s$. In this case $xs > x$ in the Bruhat order and $xs \in {}^f W$. The proof is similar to (and slightly simpler than) the proof of Case 2. In fact, by induction there exists a family $(f_i)_{i \in I}$ of elements in the image of $\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{v}}$ whose image spans $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$, and a family $(g_j)_{j \in J}$ of elements in the image of $\alpha_{\underline{xs}, \underline{v}}$ whose image spans $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)^{\downarrow\lambda^s}}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{xs}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{v}))$. Then by Proposition 3.10(1) there exists morphisms $f'_i : \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}(\underline{xs})$ and $g'_j : \mathbb{T}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}(\underline{xs})$ such that the images of the compositions

$$(5.3) \quad \Theta_s(f_i) \circ f'_i \quad \text{and} \quad \Theta_s(g_j) \circ g'_j$$

span $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{y}))$. By Lemma 5.8 (applied to the reduced expression \underline{x}) the morphism $\beta_{\underline{x}, \underline{x}s}$ and $\beta_{\underline{x}, \underline{x}ss}$ are surjective; hence we can assume that the morphisms f'_i are in the image of $\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{x}s}$ and that the morphisms g'_j are in the image of $\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{x}ss}$. Then all the morphisms in (5.3) are in the image of $\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}$, and the proof is complete in this case also. \square

5.4. Dimensions of morphism spaces. When one specializes the parameter v of the Hecke algebra \mathcal{H} to 1, the Hecke algebra specializes to the group algebra $\mathbb{Z}[W]$, and the antispherical module $\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$ specializes to the antispherical right module

$$\mathbf{M}^{\text{asph}} := \mathbb{Z}_\varepsilon \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[W_f]} \mathbb{Z}[W]$$

of $\mathbb{Z}[W]$. (Here \mathbb{Z}_ε is a the rank one free \mathbb{Z} -module where W_f acts via the sign character ε .) This \mathbb{Z} -module has a natural basis parametrized by fW : for $w \in W$ we denote by N'_w the element $1 \otimes w$. For $\underline{w} = s_1 \cdots s_r$ an expression, we also set

$$\underline{N}'_{\underline{w}} = 1 \otimes (1 + s_1) \cdots (1 + s_r).$$

Lemma 5.9. *For any expression \underline{w} , the integer*

$$(\mathbb{T}(\underline{w}) : \nabla(\lambda_0)) = \dim_{\mathbb{k}} (\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\lambda_0), \mathbb{T}(\underline{w})))$$

is equal to the coefficient of $\underline{N}'_{\underline{w}}$ on N'_{id} .

Proof. For any $s \in S$ and $w \in {}^fW$, using (4.3) we see that

$$N'_w \cdot (1 + s) = \begin{cases} N'_w + N'_{ws} & \text{if } ws \in {}^fW, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

These formulas show that the isomorphism of \mathbb{Z} -modules

$$\mathbf{M}^{\text{asph}} \xrightarrow{\sim} [\text{Rep}_0(G)]$$

sending N'_w to $[\nabla(w \bullet \lambda_0)]$ intertwines right multiplication by $(1 + s)$ with the morphism $[\Theta_s]$. The lemma follows. \square

Lemma 5.10. *For any expression \underline{w} , the dimension of the \mathbb{k} -vector space*

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_\emptyset, \overline{B}_{\underline{w}})$$

is at most the coefficient of $\underline{N}'_{\underline{w}}$ on N'_{id} .

Proof. Using the antiequivalence τ of §4.2, it is equivalent to prove the similar claim for $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_\emptyset)$. By Proposition 4.7, the dimension of $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_\emptyset)$ is at most the cardinality of $\{\underline{e} \subset \underline{w} \mid \underline{w}^{\underline{e}} = \text{id} \text{ and } \underline{e} \text{ avoids } W \setminus {}^fW\}$. By Lemma 4.1 this number is the coefficient of $\underline{N}'_{\underline{w}}$ on N'_{id} , and the lemma follows. \square

5.5. Proof of Theorem 5.3. We can finally give the proof of Theorem 5.3. For any $s \in S_f$ we have

$$\tilde{\Psi}(B_s) = \mathbb{T}(\lambda_0) \cdot B_s = \Theta_s(\mathbb{T}(\lambda_0)) = 0.$$

Since any object B_w with $w \notin {}^fW$ is a direct summand in a shift of an object of the form $B_s \cdot X$ with $s \in S_f$, it follows that $\tilde{\Psi}$ factors through a functor

$$\Psi : \mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}} \rightarrow \text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G)).$$

First, let us prove (1). For this it suffices to prove that for any expressions \underline{x} and \underline{w} the functor Ψ induces an isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{x}}, \overline{B}_{\underline{w}}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{x}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{w})).$$

We prove this claim by induction on $\ell(\underline{x})$. If $\ell(\underline{x}) = 0$, then $\underline{x} = \emptyset$. In this case, Proposition 5.7 implies that the morphism induced by Ψ is surjective. Comparing the dimensions using Lemmas 5.9 and 5.10, it follows that this morphism is an isomorphism, and the desired claim is proved.

Now assume that $\ell(\underline{x}) > 0$, and write $\underline{x} = \underline{y}s$ with $s \in S$. Consider the morphisms

$$B_{\emptyset} \rightarrow B_s B_s \quad \text{and} \quad B_s B_s \rightarrow B_{\emptyset}$$

obtained by composing the appropriate trivalent vertex with the appropriate dot morphism, and their images

$$\text{id} \rightarrow \Theta_s \Theta_s \quad \text{and} \quad \Theta_s \Theta_s \rightarrow \text{id}.$$

These morphisms satisfy the zigzag relations, hence are adjunction morphisms for some adjunctions $((-) \cdot B_s, (-) \cdot B_s)$ and (Θ_s, Θ_s) respectively. Using these adjunctions we obtain the following commutative diagram, where vertical morphisms are induced by Ψ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{B}_{\underline{y}s}, \overline{B}_{\underline{w}}) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{B}_{\underline{y}}, \overline{B}_{\underline{w}s}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}s), \mathbb{T}(\underline{w})) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\mathbb{T}(\underline{y}), \mathbb{T}(\underline{w}s)). \end{array}$$

By induction we know that the right vertical arrow is an isomorphism, and we deduce that the left vertical arrow is also an isomorphism.

Now we consider (2). Clearly, it is enough to prove that $\Psi(\overline{B}_w)$ is indecomposable for any $w \in {}^f W$. For this we observe that by (1) we have an algebra isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\Psi(\overline{B}_w), \Psi(\overline{B}_w)) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{B}_w, \overline{B}_w).$$

Since \overline{B}_w is indecomposable in $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$, the subring

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_w, \overline{B}_w) \subset \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{B}_w, \overline{B}_w)$$

is local. By [GG, Theorem 3.1], we deduce that the ring $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{B}_w, \overline{B}_w)$ is local, and then that the ring $\text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(\Psi(\overline{B}_w), \Psi(\overline{B}_w))$ is local. This implies that $\Psi(\overline{B}_w)$ is indecomposable, and finishes the proof.

5.6. Graded form of $\text{Rep}_0(G)$. In this section we preserve the setup of §5.1, and explain how Conjecture 5.1 implies that the block $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ admits a grading in the sense of [BGS, Definition 4.3.1]. *In this subsection, we assume that Conjecture 5.1 holds.*

From the fundamental vanishing (2.1) we deduce the vanishing

$$(5.4) \quad \text{Ext}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}^i(\mathbb{T}(\lambda), \mathbb{T}(\mu)) = 0 \quad \text{for all } i > 0 \text{ and } \lambda, \mu \in \mathbf{X}_0^+.$$

Now $D^b(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ is generated by $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$. These considerations and Beilinson's lemma imply that the inclusion functor provides an equivalence

$$K^b(\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))) \xrightarrow{\sim} D^b(\text{Rep}_0(G)).$$

Then, combining the above equivalence with Theorem 5.3, we obtain the following result.

Corollary 5.11. *There exists a triangulated functor*

$$\Psi: K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}) \rightarrow D^b(\text{Rep}_0(G))$$

and an isomorphism $\zeta: \Psi \circ \langle 1 \rangle \xrightarrow{\sim} \Psi$ which satisfy the following properties:

- (1) *for any X, Y in $K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})$, Ψ and ζ induce an isomorphism of \mathbb{k} -vector spaces*

$$\bigoplus_{m \in \mathbb{Z}} \text{Hom}_{K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})}(X, Y\langle m \rangle) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Hom}_{D^b(\text{Rep}_0(G))}(\Psi(X), \Psi(Y));$$

- (2) *for any $w \in {}^fW$, $\Psi(\overline{B}_w) \cong \mathbb{T}(w \bullet \lambda_0)$.*

In particular, $K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})$ gives a “graded version” of $D^b(\text{Rep}_0(G))$. The following proposition implies that the standard and costandard objects may be lifted to this graded version.

Proposition 5.12. *For all $x \in {}^fW$ there exist objects $\tilde{\Delta}_x, \tilde{\nabla}_x \in K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})$ and maps*

$$i_x: \tilde{\Delta}_x \rightarrow \overline{B}_x \quad \text{and} \quad p_x: \overline{B}_x \rightarrow \tilde{\nabla}_x$$

such that:

- (1) *we have isomorphisms $\Psi(\tilde{\Delta}_x) \cong \Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0)$ and $\Psi(\tilde{\nabla}_x) \cong \nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0)$;*
 (2) *the map $\Psi(i_x)$, resp. $\Psi(p_x)$, identifies, up to a nonzero scalar, with the unique nonzero (and injective) morphism $\Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{T}(x \bullet \lambda_0)$, resp. with the unique nonzero (and surjective) morphism $\mathbb{T}(x \bullet \lambda_0) \twoheadrightarrow \nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0)$.*

Remark 5.13. It can be easily checked that the objects $\tilde{\Delta}_x$ and $\tilde{\nabla}_x$ as in Proposition 5.12 are unique up to isomorphism.

Before giving the proof of Proposition 5.12 we note the following fact.

Lemma 5.14. *Let $x \in {}^fW$ and $s \in S$ be such that $xs \in {}^fW$ and $x < xs$ in the Bruhat order.*

- (1) *The morphism $\nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0) \rightarrow \Theta_s(\nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0))$ given by the image under the action of Conjecture 5.1 of the lower dot morphism $B_\emptyset \rightarrow B_s\langle 1 \rangle$ (applied to $\nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0)$) is injective, and its cokernel is isomorphic to $\nabla(xs \bullet \lambda_0)$.*
 (2) *The morphism $\Theta_s(\Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0)) \rightarrow \Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0)$ given by the image under the action of Conjecture 5.1 of the upper dot morphism $B_s \rightarrow B_\emptyset\langle 1 \rangle$ (applied to $\Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0)$) is surjective, and its kernel is isomorphic to $\Delta(xs \bullet \lambda_0)$.*

Proof. We prove (1); the proof of (2) is similar. By Lemma 5.5, the morphism under consideration is nonzero. And by Lemma 3.2, there exists only one such nonzero morphism, up to scalar. Hence this morphism must coincide (up to scalar) with the first morphism of the exact sequence of [Ja, Proposition II.7.19(a)], and the claim follows. \square

Proof of Proposition 5.12. We prove the proposition by induction on $\ell(x)$. If $\ell(x) = 0$ then $x = \text{id}$, and one can take $\tilde{\Delta}_{\text{id}} = \tilde{\nabla}_{\text{id}} = \overline{B}_{\text{id}}$ and $i_{\text{id}} = p_{\text{id}} = \text{id}_{\overline{B}_{\text{id}}}$.

Now fix $x \in {}^fW$, and assume that we have proved the proposition for all $y \in {}^fW$ with $\ell(y) < \ell(x)$. Certainly we can find $s \in S$ with $xs < x$ in the Bruhat order; then $xs \in {}^fW$, see (4.3). We define $\tilde{\Delta}_x$ and $\tilde{\nabla}_x$ as follows:

$$\tilde{\Delta}_x := \text{cone}(\tilde{\Delta}_{xs}B_s \rightarrow \tilde{\Delta}_{xs}\langle 1 \rangle)[-1], \quad \tilde{\nabla}_x := \text{cone}(\tilde{\nabla}_{xs}\langle -1 \rangle \rightarrow \tilde{\nabla}_{xs}B_s),$$

where the morphisms are induced by the upper and lower dot maps respectively. It follows from induction and Lemma 5.14 below that $\Psi(\tilde{\Delta}_x) \cong \Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0)$ and $\Psi(\tilde{\nabla}_x) \cong \nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0)$.

Now consider the compositions

$$\tilde{\Delta}_{xs} B_s \xrightarrow{i_{xs} B_s} \overline{B}_{xs} B_s \rightarrow \overline{B}_x \quad \text{and} \quad \overline{B}_x \rightarrow \overline{B}_{xs} B_s \xrightarrow{p_{xs} B_s} \tilde{\nabla}_{xs} B_s,$$

where the first (resp. second) unlabelled map is a choice of projection onto (resp. inclusion of) the indecomposable summand \overline{B}_x of $\overline{B}_{xs} B_s$. These maps induce maps

$$i_x: \tilde{\Delta}_x \rightarrow \overline{B}_x \quad \text{and} \quad p_x: \overline{B}_x \rightarrow \tilde{\nabla}_x.$$

It is easily seen that $\Psi(i_x)$ and $\Psi(p_x)$ are nonzero, and the proposition follows. \square

Let $(D^{\leq 0}, D^{\geq 0})$ denote the standard t-structure on $D^b(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ with heart $\text{Rep}_0(G)$. Then it is standard (and easy to check from the axioms of a highest weight category) that we have

$$D^{\leq 0} = \langle \Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0)[n] \mid x \in {}^f W, n \in \mathbb{Z}, n \geq 0 \rangle_{\text{ext}},$$

$$D^{\geq 0} = \langle \nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0)[n] \mid x \in {}^f W, n \in \mathbb{Z}, n \leq 0 \rangle_{\text{ext}},$$

where $\langle - \rangle_{\text{ext}}$ denotes the smallest full additive subcategory of $D^b(\text{Rep}_0(G))$ containing the specified objects and closed under extensions.⁵

We now explain how to lift this t-structure to $K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})$. From Corollary 5.11 and the fact that $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ is a highest weight category we deduce that for $x, y \in {}^f W$ and $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ we have

$$(5.5) \quad \text{Hom}_{K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})}(\tilde{\nabla}_x, \tilde{\nabla}_y \langle m \rangle [n]) = 0 \quad \text{unless } y \bullet \lambda_0 \uparrow x \bullet \lambda_0,$$

$$(5.6) \quad \text{Hom}_{K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})}(\tilde{\nabla}_x, \tilde{\nabla}_x \langle m \rangle [n]) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{k} & \text{if } m = n = 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

$$(5.7) \quad \text{Hom}_{K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})}(\tilde{\nabla}_x, \tilde{\nabla}_y \langle m \rangle [n]) = \text{Hom}_{K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})}(\tilde{\Delta}_x, \tilde{\Delta}_y \langle m \rangle [n]) = 0 \text{ if } n < 0.$$

Similarly, using (2.1) we obtain that

$$(5.8) \quad \text{Hom}_{K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})}(\tilde{\Delta}_x, \tilde{\nabla}_y \langle m \rangle [n]) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{k} & \text{if } x = y \text{ and } m = n = 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

If we choose a total order on ${}^f W$ which refines the order defined by $y \leq x$ iff $y \bullet \lambda_0 \uparrow x \bullet \lambda_0$ and such that ${}^f W$, endowed with this order, is isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$ (for the standard order), then properties (5.5) and (5.6) show that the objects $\tilde{\nabla}_x$ form a graded exceptional sequence in $K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})$ with respect to this order (in the sense of [B2, §2.1.5]), and (5.8) shows that the objects $\tilde{\Delta}_x$ form the dual graded exceptional sequence. Hence, by [B2, Proposition 4], if we set

$$K^{\leq 0} := \langle \tilde{\Delta}_x \langle m \rangle [n] \mid x \in {}^f W, m, n \in \mathbb{Z}, n \geq 0 \rangle_{\text{ext}},$$

$$K^{\geq 0} := \langle \tilde{\nabla}_x \langle m \rangle [n] \mid x \in {}^f W, m, n \in \mathbb{Z}, n \leq 0 \rangle_{\text{ext}},$$

then $(K^{\leq 0}, K^{\geq 0})$ is a bounded t-structure on $K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}})$; we denote its heart by $\widetilde{\text{Rep}}_0(G)$. The shift functor $\langle 1 \rangle$ obviously stabilizes this subcategory.

Property (5.7) and [B2, Proposition 4(c)] show that the objects $\tilde{\Delta}_x$ and $\tilde{\nabla}_x$ belong to $\widetilde{\text{Rep}}_0(G)$. Using this, standard arguments show that the category $\widetilde{\text{Rep}}_0(G)$

⁵Recall that B is an extension of A, C if there exists a distinguished triangle $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \xrightarrow{[1]}$.

is graded quasi-hereditary in the sense of [AR3, Definition 2.1] (with the obvious replacement of condition (1) by the condition of Definition 2.1), and that the realization functor provides an equivalence of triangulated categories

$$D^b \widetilde{\text{Rep}}_0(G) \xrightarrow{\sim} K^b(\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}).$$

The following theorem is a standard consequence of these remarks and Corollary 5.11.

Theorem 5.15. *There exists an exact functor*

$$\Psi: \widetilde{\text{Rep}}_0(G) \rightarrow \text{Rep}_0(G)$$

of abelian categories and an isomorphism $\zeta: \Psi \circ \langle 1 \rangle \xrightarrow{\sim} \Psi$ which satisfy the following properties:

- (1) *for any X, Y in $\widetilde{\text{Rep}}_0(G)$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, Ψ and ζ induce an isomorphism of \mathbb{k} -vector spaces*

$$\bigoplus_{m \in \mathbb{Z}} \text{Ext}_{\widetilde{\text{Rep}}_0(G)}^n(X, Y \langle m \rangle) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Ext}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}^n(\Psi(X), \Psi(Y));$$

- (2) *for any $x \in {}^f W$, there exists objects $\overline{B}_x, \tilde{\Delta}_x, \tilde{\nabla}_x, \tilde{\mathbb{L}}_x$ in $\widetilde{\text{Rep}}_0(G)$ such that $\tilde{\mathbb{L}}_x$ is simple, as well as a diagram of morphisms*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \overline{B}_x & \\ \tilde{\Delta}_x \swarrow & & \searrow \tilde{\nabla}_x \\ & \tilde{\mathbb{L}}_x & \end{array}$$

which after applying Ψ becomes the diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & T(x \bullet \lambda_0) & \\ \Delta(x \bullet \lambda_0) \swarrow & & \searrow \nabla(x \bullet \lambda_0) \\ & \mathbb{L}(x \bullet \lambda_0) & \end{array}$$

Remark 5.16. Theorem 5.15 can be rephrased as stating that $\widetilde{\text{Rep}}_0(G)$ is a grading on $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ in the sense of [BGS, Definition 4.3.1] and that the standard, costandard and tilting modules, as well as the canonical maps between them, all lift to this grading.

5.7. Integral form of $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$. Throughout this section we have assumed that \mathbb{k} is a field. In this subsection we describe how one can use an integral form of \mathcal{D}_{BS} to define a graded integral form of $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$. Since we will have to consider the categories \mathcal{D}_{BS} and $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}$ over different rings of coefficients, from now on we indicate this ring in the notation. In particular, if \mathbb{k} is as in §5.1, we can consider the categories $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{k}}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{k}}^{\text{asph}}$ over \mathbb{k} .

Recall that the connected reductive group G may be obtained via extension of scalars from of reductive group scheme $G_{\mathbb{Z}}$ over \mathbb{Z} . Then for any field \mathbb{k} as in §5.1 we can consider the group the extension of scalars $G_{\mathbb{k}}$ of $G_{\mathbb{Z}}$ to \mathbb{k} , and all the combinatorial data attached to the group in Sections 3 and 4, in particular the groups W and W_f are independent of the choice of \mathbb{k} .

We start with the following observation, which is clear from the proof of Theorem 5.3 (see §5.5).

Lemma 5.17. *Let \mathbb{k} be as in §5.1, and assume that Conjecture 5.1 holds for $G_{\mathbb{k}}$ and some choice of λ_0 . Then for any expression \underline{w} , the elements considered in Proposition 4.7 actually form a basis of $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{k}}^{\mathrm{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$.*

We denote by k'_0 the product of the prime numbers which divide the determinant of the Cartan matrix of Φ , and set $k_0 = k'_0$ if condition (4.5) holds for $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{Z}[\frac{1}{k'_0}]$, and $k_0 = 2k'_0$ otherwise. Then we set $\mathbb{Z}' := \mathbb{Z}[\frac{1}{k_0}]$. This ring satisfies both (4.4) and (4.5), so that we can consider the categories $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\mathrm{asph}}$ over \mathbb{Z}' . Moreover, for any field \mathbb{k} as in §5.1 there exists a unique morphism $\mathbb{Z}' \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$.

Lemma 5.18. *Assume that there exists infinitely many primes $p > h$ such that Conjecture 5.1 holds for $G_{\mathbb{F}_p}$ and some choice of λ_0 .*

For any expressions \underline{w} and \underline{v} and any $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, the \mathbb{Z}' -module

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\mathrm{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}\langle n \rangle}, \overline{B}_{\underline{v}\langle m \rangle})$$

is free of finite rank over \mathbb{Z}' . Moreover, for any field \mathbb{k} as in §5.1 such that Conjecture 5.1 holds for $G_{\mathbb{k}}$ and some choice of λ_0 , the natural morphism

$$(5.9) \quad \mathbb{k} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}'} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\mathrm{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}\langle n \rangle}, \overline{B}_{\underline{v}\langle m \rangle}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{k}}^{\mathrm{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}\langle n \rangle}, \overline{B}_{\underline{v}\langle m \rangle})$$

is an isomorphism.

Proof. Using adjunction as in §5.5, we can assume that $\underline{v} = \emptyset$. In this case, consider the “light leaves basis” considered in the proof of Proposition 4.7 for the coefficients \mathbb{Z}' . By (4.8), adding if necessary to the morphisms $L_{\underline{w},\underline{e}}$ where \underline{e} does not avoid $W \setminus {}^f W$ some linear combinations of morphisms $L_{\underline{w},\underline{e}'}$ with $\underline{e}' < \underline{e}$ in the path dominance order, one can construct a basis $(\varphi_{\underline{e}} : \underline{e} \subset \underline{w}, \underline{w}^{\underline{e}} = \mathrm{id})$ for the left R -module $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset})$ such that $\varphi_{\underline{e}}$ vanishes in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\mathrm{asph}}$ if \underline{e} does not avoid $W \setminus {}^f W$ and such that the images of the morphism $\varphi_{\underline{e}}$ for \underline{e} avoiding $W \setminus {}^f W$ span $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\mathrm{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}\langle n \rangle}, \overline{B}_{\underline{v}\langle m \rangle})$ as a \mathbb{Z}' -module. Then if we choose a \mathbb{Z}' -basis $(f_i : i \in I)$ for the ideal of R generated by \mathfrak{h} , then elements $\varphi_{\underline{e}}$ and $f_i \cdot \varphi_{\underline{e}}$ with \underline{e} as above and $i \in I$ form a \mathbb{Z}' -basis of $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset})$.

We claim that, under our assumption, the kernel of the morphism

$$(5.10) \quad \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\mathrm{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$$

is spanned by the elements $\varphi_{\underline{e}}$ where \underline{e} does not avoid $W \setminus {}^f W$ and the elements $f_i \cdot \varphi_{\underline{e}}$ for all \underline{e} and $i \in I$. Indeed, by construction all these elements are annihilated by (5.10). Now let $g \in \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset})$ be in the kernel of (5.10). Consider the decomposition of g on the \mathbb{Z}' -basis considered above, and assume for a contradiction that the coefficient on some $\varphi_{\underline{e}}$ where \underline{e} avoids $W \setminus {}^f W$ is nonzero. Choose a prime $p > h$ such that p does not divide this coefficient and such that Conjecture 5.1 holds for $G_{\mathbb{F}_p}$ and some choice of λ_0 . Then if g' is the image of g in

$$\mathbb{k} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}'} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{Z}'}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset}) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{k}}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset})$$

(where the isomorphism is canonical and follows from [EW2, Theorem 6.11]), the image of g' in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS},\mathbb{k}}^{\mathrm{asph}}$ is nonzero by Lemma 5.17; this provides the desired contradiction.

From this claim we deduce the properties stated in the lemma: the \mathbb{Z}' -module $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$ is free and has a basis formed by the images of the elements $\varphi_{\underline{e}}$ where \underline{e} avoids $W \setminus {}^f W$. And if Conjecture 5.1 holds for some \mathbb{k} , then (5.9) sends a basis of the left-hand side to a basis of the right-hand side (see Lemma 5.17), hence is an isomorphism. \square

Remark 5.19. Lemma 5.18 can also be deduced from Theorem 11.13 below without having to assume the validity of Conjecture 5.1; see §11.5 for details.

The following theorem (an easy consequence of Theorem 5.3 and Lemma 5.18) shows that $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\text{asph}}$ provides a “graded integral form” of $\text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G))$.

Theorem 5.20. *Assume that there exists infinitely many primes $p > h$ such that Conjecture 5.1 holds for $G_{\mathbb{F}_p}$ and some choice of λ_0 .*

Let \mathbb{k} and λ_0 be as in §5.1, and assume that Conjecture 5.1 holds for these data. Then there exists an additive functor

$$F: \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\text{asph}} \rightarrow \text{Tilt}(\text{Rep}_0(G_{\mathbb{k}}))$$

and an isomorphism $\zeta: F \circ \langle 1 \rangle \xrightarrow{\sim} F$ such that for any X, Y in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\text{asph}}$, F and ζ induce an isomorphism of \mathbb{k} -vector spaces

$$\mathbb{k} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}'} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\text{asph}}}(X, Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Hom}_{\text{Rep}_0(G)}(F(X), F(Y)).$$

Remark 5.21. As discussed above, over any field or complete local ring [EW2, Theorem 6.25] gives a description of the split Grothendieck group of the Karoubi envelope of the additive hull of \mathcal{D}_{BS} in terms of W . We gave a similar description of the indecomposable objects in $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ in terms of ${}^f W$ in §4.4. We have no idea if a similar classification of the indecomposable objects in the Karoubi envelope of $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}$ or $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\text{asph}}$ is possible. (As \mathbb{Z}' is not a complete local ring, it is not possible to apply idempotent lifting arguments.)

5.8. Integral form of $\text{Rep}_0(G)$. As in §5.7, in this subsection we assume that $G_{\mathbb{Z}}$ is a split connected reductive group defined over \mathbb{Z} , with simply-connected derived subgroup. Given any algebraically closed field \mathbb{k} we let $G_{\mathbb{k}}$ denote the extension of scalars of $G_{\mathbb{Z}}$ to \mathbb{k} . *In this subsection we fix $N \geq h$, and assume that for all fields \mathbb{k} of characteristic $p > N$, there exists λ_0 as in §3.1 such that Conjecture 5.1 holds for $G_{\mathbb{k}}$ and λ_0 .*

We set $\mathbb{Z}' := \mathbb{Z}[\frac{1}{N!}]$, and consider the graded \mathbb{Z}' -linear category $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\text{asph}}$ and its natural right action of the monoidal category $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}$. We define the triangulated category \mathbf{K} as the bounded homotopy category of the additive hull of the category $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\text{asph}}$. For any algebraically closed field \mathbb{k} of characteristic $p > N$ we also set

$$\mathbf{K}_{\mathbb{k}} := K^{\text{b}}(\mathcal{D}_{\mathbb{k}}^{\text{asph}}).$$

The functor $\mathbf{K} \rightarrow \mathbf{K}_{\mathbb{k}}$ given by tensoring all homomorphism spaces with \mathbb{k} gives rise to a triangulated functor

$$\mathbb{k}: \mathbf{K} \rightarrow \mathbf{K}_{\mathbb{k}}.$$

We denote the objects $\tilde{\Delta}_x, \tilde{\nabla}_x, \overline{B}_x, \tilde{\mathbb{L}}_x$ of 5.6 by $\tilde{\Delta}_x^{\mathbb{k}}, \tilde{\nabla}_x^{\mathbb{k}}, \overline{B}_x^{\mathbb{k}}, \tilde{\mathbb{L}}_x^{\mathbb{k}}$ to emphasize their dependence on the base field \mathbb{k} .

Remark 5.22. It might seem strange that we do not take a Karoubi envelope in the definition of \mathbf{K} . To make this more natural, one can remark that, for any \mathbb{k} as above, the natural fully-faithful functor from the bounded homotopy category of the additive hull of $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{k}}^{\text{asph}}$ to $\mathbf{K}_{\mathbb{k}}$ is an equivalence. In fact it is easily checked by induction on the Bruhat order that the essential image of this functor contains all objects \overline{B}_w with $w \in {}^f W$, and the claim follows.

In the considerations below, the order \leq we consider on W is the Bruhat order. For any ideal $I \subset W$ we denote by \mathbf{K}_I the full triangulated graded subcategory generated by the objects $\overline{B}_{\underline{x}}$ for \underline{x} a reduced expression for $x \in I$.

To state the next lemma we need to use the Hecke product (sometimes called the Demazure product) in W as considered e.g. in [BM, §3]. In fact, recall from [BM, Proposition 3.1] that there exists a unique associative product $*$ on W which satisfies

$$w * s = \begin{cases} ws & \text{if } ws > w; \\ w & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

for $w \in W$ and $s \in S$. Given an expression $\underline{x} = s_1 \cdots s_m$ we set

$$*\underline{x} := s_1 * s_2 * \cdots * s_m.$$

Below we will use the following properties:

$$(5.11) \quad \text{if } \underline{w} \text{ and } \underline{x} \text{ differ by a braid relation, then } *\underline{w} = *\underline{v};$$

$$(5.12) \quad \text{if } \underline{w} \text{ is obtained from } \underline{x} \text{ by omitting some reflections, then } *\underline{w} \leq *\underline{x}.$$

In fact, (5.11) is clear from associativity, and (5.12) follows from [BM, Proposition 3.1(c)].

Lemma 5.23. *For any expression \underline{x} we have $\overline{B}_{\underline{x}} \in \mathbf{K}_{\leq *\underline{x}}$.*

Proof. We prove the lemma by induction; first on the length $\ell(*\underline{x})$ of $*\underline{x}$, and then on the length $\ell(\underline{x})$ of \underline{x} . If $\ell(*\underline{x}) = 0$ then $\underline{x} = \emptyset$ and the lemma is obvious. Also, if $\ell(\underline{x}) = \ell(*\underline{x})$ then \underline{x} is reduced and the lemma follows from the definitions. So we fix an expression \underline{x} with $\ell(\underline{x}) > \ell(*\underline{x})$ and assume that the lemma is known for all expressions \underline{y} with $\ell(*\underline{y}) < \ell(*\underline{x})$ and all expressions \underline{x}' with $\ell(*\underline{x}') = \ell(*\underline{x})$ and $\ell(\underline{x}') < \ell(\underline{x})$.

If \underline{x} contains a subexpression of the form ss then we can apply Lemma 4.5 to deduce an isomorphism

$$\overline{B}_{\underline{x}} \cong \overline{B}_{\underline{x}'} \langle 1 \rangle \oplus \overline{B}_{\underline{x}'} \langle -1 \rangle$$

with $\ell(\underline{x}') < \ell(\underline{x})$ and $*\underline{x} = *\underline{x}'$, and we are done by induction. If \underline{x} contains no such subexpression then because $\ell(\underline{x}) > \ell(*\underline{x})$ there exists an expression \underline{y} and a sequence of braid relations which connects \underline{x} and \underline{y} , such that \underline{y} has a subexpression of the form ss . If we denote by $f: \overline{B}_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow \overline{B}_{\underline{y}}$ the associated morphism (as in §4.3, except that now we do not require that the expression is reduced) then, using the obvious generalization of Lemma 4.6, (5.12), and induction, we conclude that f is an isomorphism in the Verdier quotient $\mathbf{K}/\mathbf{K}_{< *\underline{x}}$. Since $*\underline{x} = *\underline{y}$ by (5.11), $\overline{B}_{\underline{y}}$ belongs to $\mathbf{K}_{\leq *\underline{x}}$ by the one of the cases treated above, hence so does $\overline{B}_{\underline{x}}$. The lemma follows. \square

Lemma 5.24. *Let $I \subset W$ be an ideal. Choose, for any $x \in I \cap {}^f W$, a reduced expression $\underline{w}(x)$ for x . Then \mathbf{K}_I is generated, as a graded triangulated category, by the objects $\{\overline{B}_{\underline{w}(x)} : x \in I \cap {}^f W\}$.*

Proof. Let us write K'_I for the category generated by the objects as in the lemma. We have to show that if \underline{x} is a reduced expression for $x \in I$ then $\overline{B}_{\underline{x}} \in K'_I$. We do so by induction on $\ell(\underline{x}) = \ell(x)$, the case $x = \text{id}$ being obvious.

There exists a rex move $\underline{x} \rightsquigarrow \underline{y}$ such that \underline{y} is either $\underline{w}(x)$ (if $x \in {}^fW$), or of the form $s_1 s_2 \cdots s_m$ with $s_1 \in S_f$ (if $x \notin {}^fW$). As in the proof of Lemma 5.23, using Lemma 4.6 we see that the associated morphism $\overline{B}_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow \overline{B}_{\underline{y}}$ is an isomorphism in $K/K_{<x}$. On the other hand, if $x \in {}^fW$ then $\overline{B}_{\underline{y}}$ belongs to K'_I , and if $x \notin {}^fW$ then $\overline{B}_{\underline{y}} = 0$ in K by definition. Since $K_{<x} \subset K'_I$ by induction, the claim follows. \square

Remark 5.25. It follows in particular from Lemma 5.24 that the subcategory K_I depends only on the intersection $I \cap {}^fW$.

Proposition 5.26. *For all reduced expressions \underline{x} for $x \in {}^fW$ there exist objects $\Delta_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ and $\nabla_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ in K , and maps*

$$i_{\underline{x}}: \Delta_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'} \rightarrow \overline{B}_{\underline{x}} \quad \text{and} \quad p_{\underline{x}}: \overline{B}_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow \nabla_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'},$$

such that:

- (1) $\Delta_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ and $\nabla_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ belong to $K_{\leq x}$;
- (2) $\text{cone}(i_{\underline{x}})$ and $\text{cone}(p_{\underline{x}})$ belong to $K_{<x}$;
- (3) for any algebraically closed field \mathbb{k} of characteristic $p > N$, we have isomorphisms

$$\mathbb{k}(\Delta_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}) \cong \tilde{\Delta}_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{k}}, \quad \mathbb{k}(\nabla_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}) \cong \tilde{\nabla}_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{k}}.$$

Remark 5.27. We will see in Lemma 5.32 below that the objects $\Delta_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ do not depend on the reduced expression \underline{x} for x (up to canonical isomorphism).

Proof. The proof (an easy adaption of the proof of Proposition 5.12) is left to the reader. \square

Let us fix a reduced expression \underline{x} for all $x \in {}^fW$ and define

$$\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} := \Delta_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}, \quad \nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} := \nabla_{\underline{x}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}, \quad p_x := p_{\underline{x}}, \quad i_x := i_{\underline{x}}.$$

The following is immediate from Lemma 5.24 and Proposition 5.26.

Corollary 5.28. *For any ideal $I \subset W$, the subcategory K_I is generated, as a graded triangulated category, by the objects $\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ for $x \in I \cap {}^fW$, and also by the objects $\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ with $x \in I \cap {}^fW$.*

We now “lift” the vanishing statements of §5.6 to the case of \mathbb{Z}' .

Proposition 5.29. *For $x, y \in {}^fW$ and $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ we have:*

$$(5.13) \quad \text{Hom}_K(\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}, \nabla_y^{\mathbb{Z}'} \langle m \rangle [n]) = 0 \quad \text{unless } x \geq y,$$

$$(5.14) \quad \text{Hom}_K(\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}, \nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} \langle m \rangle [n]) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}' & \text{if } m = n = 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

$$(5.15) \quad \text{Hom}_K(\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}, \nabla_y^{\mathbb{Z}'} \langle m \rangle [n]) = \text{Hom}_K(\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}, \Delta_y^{\mathbb{Z}'} \langle m \rangle [n]) = 0 \quad \text{if } n < 0.$$

$$(5.16) \quad \text{Hom}_K(\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}, \nabla_y^{\mathbb{Z}'} \langle m \rangle [n]) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}' & \text{if } x = y \text{ and } m = n = 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Remark 5.30. These results are consequences of (5.5), (5.6), (5.7) and (5.8), which in turn are consequences of the corresponding vanishing for algebraic groups. We do not know any diagrammatic proof for these statements.

Proof. We prove (5.13). The argument giving the other relations is essentially identical. We can compute $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}(\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}, \nabla_y^{\mathbb{Z}'} \langle m \rangle [n])$ by choosing bounded complexes D and C of objects in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\mathrm{asph}}$ representing $\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ and $\nabla_y^{\mathbb{Z}'} \langle m \rangle$ respectively, and calculating the n -th cohomology of the complex (H^\bullet, d) with

$$H^k := \bigoplus_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\mathrm{asph}}} (D^i, C^{i+k}),$$

see [KS, §11.7]. By Proposition 5.26, for any field \mathbb{k} of characteristic $p > N$ we have $\mathbb{k}(C) = \tilde{\Delta}_x^{\mathbb{k}}$ and $\mathbb{k}(D) = \tilde{\nabla}_x^{\mathbb{k}}$. From (5.5) and Lemma 5.18 we deduce that $\mathbb{k} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}'}^L H^\bullet = 0$ if $x \not\geq y$. Hence H^\bullet is equal to 0 in the derived category of \mathbb{Z}' -modules, hence has no cohomology. \square

Proposition 5.31. *Let $I \subset W$ be an ideal.*

- (1) *The inclusion $i: \mathbb{K}_I \hookrightarrow \mathbb{K}$ admits a left adjoint i^L and a right adjoint i^R .*
- (2) *The quotient $j: \mathbb{K} \rightarrow \mathbb{K}/\mathbb{K}_I$ admits a left adjoint j^L and a right adjoint j^R .*

Proof. In this proof, we denote by $\langle X \rangle$ the full graded triangulated subcategory of \mathbb{K} generated by a set X of objects.

Let us first consider (1). We prove that i has a right adjoint; the existence of the left adjoint follows from a dual argument. Consider \mathbb{K}_I^\perp , the full subcategory of \mathbb{K} consisting of objects X with $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}(Y, X) = 0$ for all Y in \mathbb{K}_I . From Corollary 5.28 and (5.13) we one may deduce:

- (1) Any object X in \mathbb{K} is part of a distinguished triangle

$$X_I \rightarrow X \rightarrow X^I \xrightarrow{[1]}$$

with $X_I \in \langle \nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} : x \in I \cap {}^f W \rangle$ and $X^I \in \langle \nabla_y^{\mathbb{Z}'} : y \in {}^f W \setminus (I \cap {}^f W) \rangle$;

- (2) $\mathbb{K}_I^\perp = \langle \nabla_y^{\mathbb{Z}'} : y \in {}^f W \setminus (I \cap {}^f W) \rangle$.

From this and the definition of the Verdier quotient it follows that for $X \in \mathbb{K}_I$ and $Y \in \mathbb{K}$ the map

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}(i(X), Y) \rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}/\mathbb{K}_I^\perp}(qi(X), q(Y))$$

induced by the quotient $q: \mathbb{K} \rightarrow \mathbb{K}/\mathbb{K}_I^\perp$ is an isomorphism. In particular qi is fully-faithful. From (1) and (2) above one deduces easily that qi is also essentially surjective; hence it is an equivalence. Now if we fix an inverse $(qi)^{-1}$ to qi we have

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}(i(X), Y) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}/\mathbb{K}_I^\perp}(qi(X), q(Y)) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}_I}(X, (qi)^{-1}q(Y))$$

and hence our adjoint is given by $i^R := (qi)^{-1}q$.

We now turn to (2). Again, we only establish the existence of j^R and leave j^L to the reader. If we consider the composition

$$\mathbb{K}_I^\perp = \langle \nabla_y^{\mathbb{Z}'} \mid y \notin I \cap {}^f W \rangle \xrightarrow{g} \mathbb{K} \xrightarrow{j} \mathbb{K}/\mathbb{K}_I$$

where g is the natural embedding, then as above (1) and (2) imply that jg is an equivalence. As above, after fixing a quasi-inverse $(jg)^{-1}$ we can take $j^R := g(jg)^{-1}$. \square

Fix an ideal $I \subset W$. Then, as in the proof of Lemma 5.4, for any element $x \in {}^f W$ which is minimal in $W \setminus I$ and any two reduced expressions \underline{x}' and \underline{x}'' for x , the images of the objects $\overline{B}_{\underline{x}'}$ and $\overline{B}_{\underline{x}''}$ in \mathbf{K}/\mathbf{K}_I are canonically isomorphic, via the isomorphism associated with any choice of rex move $\underline{x}' \rightsquigarrow \underline{x}''$, see [EW2, §6.5]. We denote the resulting object \mathbb{Z}'_x .

Lemma 5.32. *For any ideal $I \subset W$ and any minimal element $x \in {}^f W \setminus I$, there exists canonical isomorphisms*

$$\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} = j^L \mathbb{Z}'_x \quad \text{and} \quad \nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} = j^R \mathbb{Z}'_x.$$

(Here j^L, j^R are the adjoints to $\mathbf{K} \rightarrow \mathbf{K}/\mathbf{K}_I$ constructed in Proposition 5.31.) In particular, the objects $\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ and $\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ for all $x \in {}^f W$ are independent of the choice of reduced expression used to define them.

Proof. Again, we give the proof of the canonical isomorphism $\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} \cong j^R \mathbb{Z}'_x$, and leave the dual statement $\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} \cong j^L \mathbb{Z}'_x$ to the reader. Looking at the proof of Proposition 5.31, and using the same notation, we see that, since $\mathbb{Z}'_x = jg(\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}), j^R \mathbb{Z}'_x$ may be calculated as the image of $\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ under the embedding

$$\mathbf{K}_I^\perp = \langle \nabla_y^{\mathbb{Z}'} \mid y \notin I \cap {}^f W \rangle \xrightarrow{g} \mathbf{K}$$

Hence $j^R \mathbb{Z}'_x \cong \nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}$. The isomorphism is canonical because

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{K}}(\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}, j^R \mathbb{Z}'_x) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{K}/\mathbf{K}_I}(j(\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}), \mathbb{Z}'_x) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{K}/\mathbf{K}_I}(\mathbb{Z}'_x, \mathbb{Z}'_x),$$

where the identification $\mathbb{Z}'_x = j(\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'})$ is given by p_x . \square

From the above we see that if $I \subset W$ is an ideal and $x \in {}^f W \setminus I$ is a minimal element then setting $I' = I \cup \{y \in W \mid y \leq x\}$ then $\mathbf{K}_{I'}/\mathbf{K}_I$ identifies with the graded triangulated subcategory of \mathbf{K}/\mathbf{K}_I generated by \mathbb{Z}'_x , and we have an equivalence of graded triangulated categories

$$\phi_x : D^b(\mathbb{Z}'\text{-grmod}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{K}_{I'}/\mathbf{K}_I$$

sending \mathbb{Z}' to \mathbb{Z}'_x . (Here, $\mathbb{Z}'\text{-grmod}$ is the abelian category of finitely generated graded \mathbb{Z}' -modules.) For any $n \in \mathbb{Z}'$, we define

$$\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'/n\mathbb{Z}'} := \begin{cases} \Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} & \text{if } l = 0, \\ \mathrm{cone}(\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} \xrightarrow{n \cdot (-)} \Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}) & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

$$\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'/n\mathbb{Z}'} := \begin{cases} \nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} & \text{if } l = 0, \\ \mathrm{cone}(\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} \xrightarrow{n \cdot (-)} \nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}) & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Then via the above equivalence ϕ_x we have

$$\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'/n\mathbb{Z}'} \cong j^L(\phi_x(\mathbb{Z}'/n\mathbb{Z}')) \quad \text{and} \quad \nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'/n\mathbb{Z}'} \cong j^R(\phi_x(\mathbb{Z}'/n\mathbb{Z}'))$$

for all $x \in {}^f W$.

In the following statement we use the notation $\langle - \rangle_{\mathrm{ext}}$ introduced in §5.6.

Theorem 5.33. *The full subcategories*

$$\mathbf{K}^{\leq 0} := \langle \Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'} \langle m \rangle [k] : x \in {}^f W, m \in \mathbb{Z}, k \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0} \rangle_{\mathrm{ext}},$$

$$\mathbf{K}^{\geq 0} := \langle \nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'/n\mathbb{Z}'} \langle m \rangle [k] : x \in {}^f W, n \in \mathbb{Z}', m \in \mathbb{Z}, k \in \mathbb{Z}_{\leq 0} \rangle_{\mathrm{ext}}$$

define a non-degenerate bounded t -structure on \mathbf{K} .

Proof. This follows from the glueing formalism of [BBD], as e.g. in [B1, Proposition 1] or in [AR2, §3.1], starting from the standard t-structure on $D^b(\mathbb{Z}'\text{-grmod})$. \square

We regard the heart of the t-structure constructed in Theorem 5.33 as an “integral form” of $\text{Rep}_0(G)$. One can deduce from (5.15) that this heart contains the objects $\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}$ and $\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}$. It is not difficult to check (using the same arguments as in the proof of Proposition 5.29) that for $x, y \in {}^fW$ the \mathbb{Z}' -modules

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}(\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}, \nabla_y^{\mathbb{Z}'}) \quad \text{and} \quad \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}(\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'}, \Delta_y^{\mathbb{Z}'})$$

are free, and to deduce that the objects $\Delta_x^{\mathbb{Z}'/n\mathbb{Z}'}$ and $\nabla_x^{\mathbb{Z}'/n\mathbb{Z}'}$ also belong to this heart.

Part 2. The case of $\mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$

Overview. In this part we give a proof of Conjecture 5.1 in the case of the group $G = \mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$ (when $p > n \geq 3$), using the theory of categorical Kac–Moody actions. Before plunging into the details we give a brief overview of our approach.

For ease of exposition, let us first consider the case of integral category \mathcal{O} for $\mathfrak{g} := \mathfrak{gl}_n(\mathbb{C})$. That is, we consider \mathfrak{g} together with its subalgebras $\mathfrak{h} \subset \mathfrak{b}$ of diagonal and upper-triangular matrices and define $\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ to be the category of finitely generated \mathfrak{g} -modules which are locally finite over \mathfrak{b} , and \mathfrak{h} -diagonalisable with integral weights (i.e. weights which are differentials of characters of the torus of diagonal matrices in $\mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$).

Inside $\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ we can consider the block \mathcal{O}_0 of the trivial module. It is a classical result of Soergel that $\mathrm{Tilt}(\mathcal{O}_0)$, the additive category of tilting modules inside \mathcal{O}_0 , has an action of the monoidal category of Soergel bimodules associated with the Weyl group S_n and its natural action on \mathfrak{h} . Indeed, Soergel proves via his functor \mathbb{V} that $\mathrm{Tilt}(\mathcal{O}_0)$ is equivalent to a category of Soergel *modules*, and from the definitions we see that this category of Soergel modules has an action of Soergel bimodules.

Remark. Soergel’s results hold for any complex semi-simple Lie algebra and were initially phrased in terms of projective modules rather than tilting modules. Tilting modules were considered in this context (using different terminology) by Irving. The (mathematically easy, but conceptually important) rephrasing of Soergel’s results in terms of tilting modules appears to be due to [BBM].

In Soergel’s approach one deduces the existence of the action of Soergel bimodules *after* obtaining a “Hecke category description” of the category of tilting modules. In the setting of our conjecture we would like information to flow the other way: we would like to obtain a Hecke category description of the category of tilting modules from the existence of a categorical action. The main reason is the difficulty to define a functor \mathbb{V} in the setting of reductive groups. (In fact, no convincing definition seems to be known.)

Let us first outline how to do this in the case of $\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$. Let us denote by $\mathbf{X} \subset \mathfrak{h}^*$ the weight lattice. Given any $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}$ we have the Verma module $\Delta_{\mathbb{C}}(\lambda) := U(\mathfrak{g}) \otimes_{U(\mathfrak{b})} \mathbb{C}_{\lambda}$ and the classes of Verma modules give a basis for the complexified Grothendieck group of $\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$:

$$[\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}]_{\mathbb{C}} = \bigoplus_{\lambda \in \mathbf{X}} \mathbb{C}[\Delta_{\mathbb{C}}(\lambda)].$$

On $\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ one has the endofunctors $E := V \otimes (-)$ and $F := V^* \otimes (-)$ given by tensoring with the natural representation $V = \mathbb{C}^n$ and its dual. Both functors have a natural endomorphism \mathbb{X} (given essentially by the action of the Casimir element), all of whose eigenvalues belong to $\mathbb{Z} \subset \mathbb{C}$. Hence we obtain decompositions of our functors

$$E = \bigoplus_{a \in \mathbb{Z}} E_a \quad \text{and} \quad F = \bigoplus_{a \in \mathbb{Z}} F_a$$

into generalized eigenspaces.

It is a remarkable observation that on the level of Grothendieck groups these functors give rise to an action of the Lie algebra \mathfrak{sl}_{∞} (whose Chevalley generators will be denoted e_i and f_i for $i \in \mathbb{Z}$). More precisely, consider the natural module $\mathrm{nat} := \bigoplus_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{C} m_i$ of “infinite column vectors” for \mathfrak{sl}_{∞} . The isomorphism of vector spaces

$$\varphi: [\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}]_{\mathbb{C}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{nat}^{\otimes n}$$

defined by

$$\varphi([\Delta_{\mathbb{C}}(\lambda)]) = m_{\lambda_1} \otimes m_{\lambda_2-1} \otimes \cdots \otimes m_{\lambda_n-n+1}$$

(where $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$ under the standard identification $\mathbf{X} = \mathbb{Z}^n$) intertwines the action of $[E_a]$ and $[F_a]$ on the left-hand side with the action of e_a and f_a on the right-hand side. In particular, the functors E_a and F_a induce an action of \mathfrak{sl}_{∞} on the Grothendieck group of $\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$. Moreover, there exist morphisms between the functors E_a, F_a and their compositions which allow us to upgrade this action on the Grothendieck group to a “categorical \mathfrak{sl}_{∞} -action” in the sense of Rouquier and Khovanov–Lauda. (The fact that the above action on the Grothendieck group of $\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ can be lifted to a categorical \mathfrak{sl}_{∞} -action is essentially due to Chuang–Rouquier [CR].)

Now, let us return to our goal of producing an action of the Hecke category on $\mathcal{O}_0 \subset \mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$. Under the isomorphism φ above, the weight spaces for the \mathfrak{sl}_{∞} -action correspond precisely to the blocks of $\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$. Moreover, on certain regular blocks one can express each wall-crossing functor in the form $F_a E_a$ for some $a \in \mathbb{Z}$. The theory of Kac–Moody actions gives us a rich supply of morphisms between the functors E_a and F_a , and it turns out that one can produce the action of the Hecke category by explicitly giving the images of all the generating morphisms and checking the relations (using known relations in the categorification of \mathfrak{sl}_{∞}).

The proof of our conjecture for $G = \mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$ over a field \mathbb{k} of characteristic $p > n$ follows a similar pattern, with one additional subtlety. Let us denote as in §3.1 by $\mathrm{Rep}(G)$ the category of finite-dimensional rational representations of G and by $\Delta(\lambda)$ the Weyl module with highest weight $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+$. Then the Weyl modules give a basis for the (complexified) Grothendieck group:

$$[\mathrm{Rep}(G)]_{\mathbb{C}} = \bigoplus_{\lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+} \mathbb{C}[\Delta(\lambda)].$$

Again we can consider the functors $E := V \otimes (-)$ and $F := V^* \otimes (-)$ given by tensoring with the natural representation of $\mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$. As in the case of $\mathfrak{gl}_n(\mathbb{C})$, these functors have a natural endomorphism, all of whose eigenvalues belong to the prime subfield $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z} \subset \mathbb{k}$, and we have decompositions

$$E = \bigoplus_{a \in \mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}} E_a \quad \text{and} \quad F = \bigoplus_{a \in \mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}} F_a.$$

In this setting the functors E_a and F_a give rise to an action of the affine Lie algebra $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ on the Grothendieck group. If this time we let nat denote the natural module for $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ (see §6.2) then we have an isomorphism of vector spaces

$$\varphi: [\mathrm{Rep}(G)]_{\mathbb{C}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \bigwedge^n \mathrm{nat}$$

defined by

$$\varphi([\Delta(\lambda)]) = m_{\lambda_1} \wedge m_{\lambda_2-1} \wedge \cdots \wedge m_{\lambda_n-n+1}.$$

Again the action of the functors E_a and F_a on $\mathrm{Rep}(G)$ can be upgraded to a categorical action of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ (and again, this is due to Chuang–Rouquier [CR]). In this setting each weight space is a union of blocks of $\mathrm{Rep}(G)$.

Let us now concentrate (as we do below) on the block containing the Weyl module $\Delta((n, n, \dots, n))$. As in the case of $\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ considered above, we can express the wall-crossing functors corresponding to “finite” simple reflections $s \in S_{\mathrm{f}}$ as compositions $F_a E_a$ for $1 \leq a \leq n-1$. Here the calculations verifying the defining relations in the Hecke category are essentially identical to those for $\mathcal{O}^{\mathbb{Z}}$. (These calculations are basically already contained in the work of Mackaay–Stošić–Vaz [MSV].) An

additional difficulty is provided by the wall-crossing functor corresponding to the affine reflection. It is not difficult to see that this functor can be expressed in terms of the Chevalley generators as

$$F_n F_{n+1} \dots F_0 E_0 \dots E_{n+1} E_n,$$

see §6.4.8. However, checking the relations directly using this definition of the wall-crossing functor is very complicated. (Such calculations are performed, with different normalizations, in [MT1, MT2].) Here we take a different approach and argue that we can “restrict” part of the 2-representation given by $\text{Rep}(G)$ to obtain a representation of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ (see Section 7). After restricting we can express all translation functors as composites $F_a E_a$ for $a \in \{0, \dots, n-1\}$ and we check the relations in the Hecke category directly, using the relations of the categorification of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$.

- Remark.* (1) It will be more convenient for us to construct a *left* action of \mathcal{D}_{BS} on $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ rather than a right action as in Conjecture 5.1. However, from a left action one can obtain a right action by composing with the equivalence \imath ; see Remark 5.2(7).
- (2) In his Ph.D. thesis [Ma], Maksimau has recently given a general setup for restricting categorical representations of $\widehat{\mathfrak{sl}}_{e+1}$ to obtain categorical representations of $\widehat{\mathfrak{sl}}_e$. Our approach at this step is a special case of his construction.

The part consists of 3 sections, corresponding to the 3 steps of our proof. In Section 6 we recall the construction of the categorical action of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ on $\text{Rep}(G)$ due to Chuang–Rouquier. In Section 7 we explain how the action on a subcategory $\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)$ can be restricted to $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ if $p \geq n \geq 3$. Finally, in Section 8 we prove that from this action one can obtain an action of \mathcal{D}_{BS} on $\text{Rep}_0(G)$, which proves Conjecture 5.1 in this case.

6. REPRESENTATIONS OF GL_n IN CHARACTERISTIC p AS A 2-REPRESENTATION OF $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$

In this section we fix an algebraically closed field \mathbb{k} of characteristic $p > 0$, and an integer $n \geq 1$. We recall the construction of a categorical action of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ on the category $\text{Rep}(\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k}))$ due to Chuang–Rouquier. All the proofs are copied from [CR]. (We have tried to follow the notation and conventions of [CR] and [Ro] as closely as possible.)

6.1. The affine Lie algebra $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$. If $N \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$, we denote by $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$ the affine Lie algebra associated with the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{gl}_N(\mathbb{C})$. More precisely, we first consider the Lie algebra

$$\widehat{\mathfrak{sl}}_N := \mathfrak{sl}_N(\mathbb{C}[t, t^{-1}]) \oplus \mathbb{C}K \oplus \mathbb{C}d$$

with the Lie bracket determined by the following rules:

$$\begin{aligned} [x \otimes t^m, y \otimes t^n] &= [x, y] \otimes t^{m+n} + m\delta_{m,-n}(x|y)K \quad \text{for all } x, y \in \mathfrak{sl}_N(\mathbb{C}), m, n \in \mathbb{Z}; \\ [d, x \otimes t^m] &= mx \otimes t^m \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathfrak{sl}_N(\mathbb{C}), m \in \mathbb{Z}; \\ [K, \widehat{\mathfrak{sl}}_N] &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Here $(-|-): \mathfrak{sl}_N(\mathbb{C}) \times \mathfrak{sl}_N(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ denotes the bilinear form $(x|y) := \text{Tr}(xy)$ on $\mathfrak{sl}_N(\mathbb{C})$. Then $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$ is the Lie algebra $\widehat{\mathfrak{sl}}_N \oplus \mathbb{C}$, where we identify $(0, 1)$ with the identity matrix in $\mathfrak{gl}_N(\mathbb{C})$.

Let $(e_{i,j})_{i,j \in \{1, \dots, N\}}$ denote the matrix units in $\mathfrak{gl}_N(\mathbb{C})$. Then for $1 \leq i \leq N-1$ we consider the Chevalley elements

$$\begin{aligned} e_i &= e_{i+1,i}, & f_i &:= e_{i,i+1}, \\ e_0 &:= te_{1,N}, & f_0 &:= t^{-1}e_{N,1}, \\ h_i &:= [e_i, f_i] = \begin{cases} e_{1,1} - e_{N,N} + K & \text{if } i = 0; \\ e_{i+1,i+1} - e_{i,i} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

in $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$.

We set $\mathfrak{h} := \mathfrak{h}_f \oplus \mathbb{C}K \oplus \mathbb{C}d \subset \widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$, where $\mathfrak{h}_f \subset \mathfrak{gl}_N(\mathbb{C})$ denotes the Cartan subalgebra of diagonal matrices. We have

$$\mathfrak{h}_f^* = \bigoplus_{i=1}^N \mathbb{C}\varepsilon_i$$

where $(\varepsilon_i)_{i \in \{1, \dots, N\}}$ is the basis dual to $e_{1,1}, \dots, e_{N,N}$. Any $\lambda_0 \in \mathfrak{h}_f^*$ may be viewed as an element of \mathfrak{h}^* by setting $\langle \lambda_0, K \rangle = \langle \lambda_0, d \rangle = 0$. In this way we view \mathfrak{h}_f^* as a subspace of \mathfrak{h}^* . Similarly, we let K^* and δ denote the linear forms on \mathfrak{h} defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \langle K^*, \mathfrak{h}_f \oplus \mathbb{C}d \rangle &= 0, & \langle K^*, K \rangle &= 1; \\ \langle \delta, \mathfrak{h}_f \oplus \mathbb{C}K \rangle &= 0, & \langle \delta, d \rangle &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

This gives a decomposition

$$\mathfrak{h}^* = \mathfrak{h}_f^* \oplus \mathbb{C}K^* \oplus \mathbb{C}\delta.$$

Let P denote the *weight lattice*:

$$P := \{\lambda \in \mathfrak{h}^* \mid \langle \lambda, h_i \rangle \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ for all } 0 \leq i \leq N-1\}.$$

The simple roots $\alpha_i \in \mathfrak{h}^*$ are given by

$$\alpha_0 = \delta - (\varepsilon_N - \varepsilon_1), \quad \alpha_i = \varepsilon_{i+1} - \varepsilon_i \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq N-1.$$

Remark 6.1. The notation $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$ is often used in the literature for the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{L} := \mathfrak{gl}_N(\mathbb{C}[t, t^{-1}]) \oplus \mathbb{C}K \oplus \mathbb{C}d$, with the obvious extension of the bracket considered above on $\widehat{\mathfrak{sl}}_N$. Our Lie algebra $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$ is a “more naive” version, namely the Kac–Moody Lie algebra associated with the affine Cartan matrix of type **A**, and its realization $(\mathfrak{h}, \{\alpha_i, i = 0, \dots, n\}, \{h_i, i = 0, \dots, n\})$. In practice we will only consider representations on which K acts trivially, i.e. representations of the quotient $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N/\mathbb{C} \cdot K$, which is naturally a Lie subalgebra in $\mathfrak{L}/\mathbb{C} \cdot K$.

6.2. The natural representation of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$. Let $A = \bigoplus_{i=1}^N \mathbb{C}a_i$ denote the natural module for $\mathfrak{gl}_N(\mathbb{C})$. Then $A \otimes_{\mathbb{C}} \mathbb{C}[t, t^{-1}]$ is naturally a module for $\mathfrak{sl}_N(\mathbb{C}[t, t^{-1}])$ via

$$(x \otimes t^m) \cdot (a \otimes t^n) := x(a) \otimes t^{m+n} \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathfrak{sl}_N(\mathbb{C}), a \in A \text{ and } m, n \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

We may extend this action to an action of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$ where K acts by 0, d acts via

$$d \cdot (a \otimes t^m) := ma \otimes t^m \quad \text{for all } a \in A \text{ and } m \in \mathbb{Z},$$

and the identity matrix acts as the identity. We call the resulting $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$ -module the *natural module* and denote it nat .

Given $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}$ write $\lambda = \mu N + \nu$ with $1 \leq \nu \leq N$ and set

$$m_\lambda := a_\nu \otimes t^\mu.$$

Then $\text{nat} = \bigoplus_{\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{C}m_\lambda$ and the action of the Chevalley elements is given by

$$(6.1) \quad e_i(m_\lambda) = \begin{cases} m_{\lambda+1} & \text{if } i \equiv \lambda \pmod{N}; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

and

$$(6.2) \quad f_i(m_\lambda) = \begin{cases} m_{\lambda-1} & \text{if } i \equiv \lambda - 1 \pmod{N}; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

If we write $\lambda = \mu N + \nu$ as above then each m_λ is a weight vector of weight $\varepsilon_\nu + \mu\delta$. In particular, all weight spaces in nat are 1-dimensional.

6.3. Realization of $\bigwedge^n \text{nat}$ as a Grothendieck group. We assume from now on in this section that $N = p$. We set $G = \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$, and we let $T \subset B \subset G$ be the maximal torus of diagonal matrices and the Borel subgroup of lower triangular matrices. With these data we use the notation of §3.1 (but we do not have to assume that $p > h = n$ at this point). We have

$$\mathbf{X} = X^*(T) = \bigoplus_{i=1}^n \mathbb{Z}\chi_i,$$

where $\chi_i: T \rightarrow \mathbb{G}_m$ is given by

$$\text{diag}(x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto x_i.$$

We will often write an element $\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \chi_i \in \mathbf{X}$ as the n -tuple $(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$. The simple roots are the characters $\chi_i - \chi_{i+1}$ for $i \in \{1, \dots, n-1\}$, and in particular the cone of dominant weights is

$$\mathbf{X}^+ = \{(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) \in \mathbf{X} \mid \lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \dots \geq \lambda_n\}.$$

We also set

$$\varsigma = (0, -1, \dots, -n+1) \in \mathbf{X}.$$

Note that $\langle \varsigma, \beta \rangle = 1$ for any simple root β , so that $w \bullet \lambda = w(\lambda + \varsigma) - \varsigma$ for all $w \in W$ and $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}$.

Recall that $\text{Rep}(G)$ denotes the abelian category of finite dimensional rational representations of G , and that given $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+$ we have the corresponding Weyl module $\Delta(\lambda) \in \text{Rep}(G)$ with highest weight λ . The classes of Weyl modules give us a basis for the Grothendieck group:

$$[\text{Rep}(G)] = \bigoplus_{\lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+} \mathbb{Z}[\Delta(\lambda)].$$

Let $V = \mathbb{k}^n$ denote the natural representation of G (which is isomorphic to $\mathbb{L}(\chi_1)$) and let V^* be its dual (which is isomorphic to $\mathbb{L}(-\chi_n)$). We have exact endofunctors of $\text{Rep}(G)$:

$$E := V \otimes (-) \quad \text{and} \quad F := V^* \otimes (-).$$

Via the unit and counit morphisms

$$\eta: \mathbb{k} \rightarrow V^* \otimes V \quad \text{and} \quad \epsilon: V \otimes V^* \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$$

we may view (E, F) as an adjoint pair of functors. We will denote again by $\eta: \text{id} \rightarrow FE$ and $\epsilon: EF \rightarrow \text{id}$ the corresponding adjunction morphisms.

Remark 6.2. Below it will be important to know that F is also left adjoint to E . However it is crucial not to fix a preferred adjunction yet.

Let $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{gl}_n(\mathbb{k})$ denote the Lie algebra of G , equipped with its natural (adjoint) structure of G -module. Given any $M \in \text{Rep}(G)$ the action map

$$a: \mathfrak{g} \otimes M \rightarrow M$$

is a morphism of G -modules. Using the natural isomorphism $\mathfrak{g} \cong V^* \otimes V$ and the natural adjunction $(V^* \otimes -, V \otimes -)$ we get a morphism

$$\mathbb{X}_M: V \otimes M \rightarrow V \otimes M$$

given by the composition

$$V \otimes M \xrightarrow{\text{adj} \otimes V \otimes M} V \otimes V^* \otimes V \otimes M \xrightarrow{V \otimes a} V \otimes M$$

which is functorial in M . In this way we obtain an endomorphism $\mathbb{X} \in \text{End}(E)$. Since F is right adjoint to E , \mathbb{X} induces an endomorphism of F , which by abuse we will also denote by \mathbb{X} . More concretely, $\mathbb{X}_M: V^* \otimes M \rightarrow V^* \otimes M$ is given by the composition

$$V^* \otimes M \xrightarrow{\eta \otimes V^* \otimes M} V^* \otimes V \otimes V^* \otimes M \xrightarrow{V^* \otimes \mathbb{X}_{V^* \otimes M}} V^* \otimes V \otimes V^* \otimes M \xrightarrow{V^* \otimes \epsilon \otimes M} V^* \otimes M.$$

We set

$$\Omega := \sum_{i,j=1}^n e_{i,j} \otimes e_{j,i} \in \mathfrak{g} \otimes \mathfrak{g},$$

where $(e_{i,j})_{i,j \in \{1, \dots, n\}}$ are the matrix units in $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{gl}_n(\mathbb{k})$. The following lemma (taken from [CR]) can be easily checked by explicit computation.

Lemma 6.3. *For any M in $\text{Rep}(G)$:*

- (1) *the endomorphism \mathbb{X}_M of $EM = V \otimes M$ is given by the action of Ω ;*
- (2) *the endomorphism \mathbb{X}_M of $FM = V^* \otimes M$ is given by $-n \cdot \text{id} - \Omega$.*

For any $a \in \mathbb{k}$, let E_a (resp. F_a) denote the summand of E (resp. F) given by the generalized a -eigenspace of \mathbb{X} acting on E (resp. F).

Lemma 6.4. *For any $a \in \mathbb{k}$, ϵ and η induce units and counits $\eta_a: \text{id} \rightarrow F_a E_a$ and $\epsilon_a: E_a F_a \rightarrow \text{id}$ making (E_a, F_a) into an adjoint pair of functors.*

Proof. To prove the lemma it suffices to prove that η and ϵ factor through morphisms

$$\text{id} \rightarrow \bigoplus_{a \in \mathbb{k}} F_a E_a \quad \text{and} \quad \bigoplus_{a \in \mathbb{k}} E_a F_a \rightarrow \text{id}.$$

First, the morphism $\eta_M: M \rightarrow FEM = V^* \otimes V \otimes M$ is defined by

$$m \mapsto \sum_{i=1}^n v_i^* \otimes v_i \otimes m,$$

where $(v_i)_{i \in \{1, \dots, n\}}$ is the standard basis of V . Now Ω acts on $F(EM) = V^* \otimes (EM)$ as the action of

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n e_{i,j} \otimes e_{j,i} \otimes 1 + e_{i,j} \otimes 1 \otimes e_{j,i} \in \mathfrak{g} \otimes \mathfrak{g} \otimes \mathfrak{g}$$

on $V^* \otimes V \otimes M$. It can be easily checked that this element acts on any vector of the form $\sum_{k=1}^n v_k^* \otimes v_k \otimes m$ as the element

$$-n \cdot (1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1) - (1 \otimes \Omega).$$

Therefore, such an element can belong to $F_a E_b M$ only if

$$-n - a = -n - b,$$

i.e. only if $a = b$, proving the claim about η .

Now, consider the morphism $\epsilon_M: EFM = V \otimes V^* \otimes M \rightarrow M$, which is defined by

$$v \otimes \xi \otimes m \mapsto \xi(v) \cdot m.$$

The element Ω acts on $E(FM) = V \otimes (FM)$ as the action of

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n e_{i,j} \otimes e_{j,i} \otimes 1 + e_{i,j} \otimes 1 \otimes e_{j,i} \in \mathfrak{g} \otimes \mathfrak{g} \otimes \mathfrak{g}$$

on $V \otimes V^* \otimes M$. Now for any $x \in EFM$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon_M \left(\left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n e_{i,j} \otimes e_{j,i} \otimes 1 + e_{i,j} \otimes 1 \otimes e_{j,i} \right) \cdot x \right) \\ = \epsilon_M \left((-n \cdot (1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1) - (1 \otimes \Omega)) \cdot x \right). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, if $x \in E_b F_a M$, then $\epsilon_M(x) = 0$ unless the operators

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n e_{i,j} \otimes e_{j,i} \otimes 1 + e_{i,j} \otimes 1 \otimes e_{j,i} \text{ and } -n \cdot (1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1) - (1 \otimes \Omega)$$

have the same generalized eigenvalue on x , i.e. unless $a = -n - (-n - b)$, which finishes the proof. \square

In the following we identify $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ with the prime subfield of \mathbb{k} . We denote by $\mathbf{X}/(W, \bullet)$ the set of orbits of the “dot-action” of the affine Weyl group W on \mathbf{X} . For any $c \in \mathbf{X}/(W, \bullet)$, we denote by

$$R_c(G)$$

the Serre subcategory of $\text{Rep}(G)$ generated by the simple objects $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$ for $\lambda \in c \cap \mathbf{X}^+$. By the linkage principle (see [Ja, Corollary II.6.17]) we have a decomposition

$$(6.3) \quad \text{Rep}(G) = \bigoplus_{c \in \mathbf{X}/(W, \bullet)} R_c(G).$$

Proposition 6.5. (1) *We have $E_a = 0$ and $F_a = 0$ unless $a \in \mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$; therefore we have*

$$E = \bigoplus_{a \in \mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}} E_a \quad \text{and} \quad F = \bigoplus_{a \in \mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}} F_a.$$

(2) *The isomorphism of \mathbb{C} -vector spaces*

$$\varphi: \mathbb{C} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} [\text{Rep}(G)] \xrightarrow{\sim} \bigwedge^n \text{nat}$$

given by

$$\varphi([\Delta(\lambda)]) = m_{\lambda_1} \wedge m_{\lambda_2-1} \wedge \cdots \wedge m_{\lambda_n-n+1} \quad \text{for } \lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+$$

satisfies $\varphi \circ [E_a] = e_a \circ \varphi$ and $\varphi \circ [F_a] = f_a \circ \varphi$. In particular, identifying $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ with $\{0, \dots, p-1\}$ in the obvious way, the exact functors E_a, F_a are part of an action of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ on $\mathbb{C} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} [\text{Rep}(G)]$.

(3) *Upon passing to Grothendieck groups the decomposition (6.3) induces the decomposition of $\bigwedge^n \text{nat}$ into weight spaces (via the isomorphism φ of (2)).*

Remark 6.6. Sometimes one considers the Lie algebra $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ without the degree operator d . However for statement (3) it is essential that we include d in our action (as can already be seen in the case $n = 1$).

Proof. For simplicity we assume that $p \neq 2$; the necessary fix to treat the case $p = 2$ is discussed in [CR, §7.5.2]. If we denote by

$$C = \sum_{1 \leq i, j \leq n} e_{j,i} e_{i,j} \in U(\mathfrak{g})$$

the Casimir element (with respect to the trace form on the natural module) then in $U(\mathfrak{g}) \otimes U(\mathfrak{g})$ we have

$$(6.4) \quad \Omega = \frac{1}{2}(\Delta(C) - C \otimes 1 - 1 \otimes C),$$

where $\Delta: U(\mathfrak{g}) \rightarrow U(\mathfrak{g}) \otimes U(\mathfrak{g})$ denotes the comultiplication.

After writing

$$C = 2 \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} e_{j,i} e_{i,j} + \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} e_{i,i}^2 + \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (e_{i,i} - e_{j,j})$$

we see that C acts on $\Delta(\lambda)$ as

$$b_\lambda := \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} \lambda_i^2 + \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (\lambda_i - \lambda_j).$$

We have

$$E\Delta(\lambda) = V \otimes \Delta(\lambda) = V \otimes (\text{Ind}_B^G(-w_0\lambda))^* \cong (\text{Ind}_B^G(V^* \otimes \mathbb{k}_B(-w_0\lambda)))^*.$$

Now the B -module $V^* \otimes \mathbb{k}_B(-w_0\lambda)$ admits a filtration with subquotients the B -modules $\mathbb{k}_B(-w_0\lambda - \chi_i)$, and each weight $-w_0\lambda - \chi_i$ is either dominant or has pairing -1 with some simple root; in any case we have $R^1 \text{Ind}_B^G(-w_0\lambda - \chi_i) = 0$, see [Ja, Proposition II.4.5 and Proposition II.5.4(a)]. Hence the filtration on $V^* \otimes \mathbb{k}_B(-w_0\lambda)$ induces a filtration on $E\Delta(\lambda)$. Since w_0 permutes the set $\{\chi_1, \dots, \chi_n\}$, the subquotients in this filtration are the G -modules $\Delta(\lambda + \chi_i)$ for all $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ such that $\lambda + \chi_i \in \mathbf{X}^+$. From (6.4) it follows that Ω acts on the subquotient of $E\Delta(\lambda)$ isomorphic to $\Delta(\lambda + \chi_i)$ as multiplication by

$$\frac{1}{2}(b_{\lambda+\chi_i} - b_{\chi_1} - b_\lambda) = \lambda_i - i + 1.$$

In particular, all the eigenvalues of $\mathbb{X}_{\Delta(\lambda)}$ on $E\Delta(\lambda)$ belong to $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$. Because any simple object in $\text{Rep}(G)$ is a quotient of some $\Delta(\lambda)$ and every object in $\text{Rep}(G)$ is of finite length, we deduce that, for any $M \in \text{Rep}(G)$, all eigenvalues of \mathbb{X}_M on EM belong to the prime field $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$. Similar arguments apply to F , and (1) is proved.

We deduce from the above calculation that

$$(6.5) \quad [E_a] \cdot [\Delta(\lambda)] = \sum_{\substack{\lambda \rightarrow_a \mu \\ \mu \in \mathbf{X}^+}} [\Delta(\mu)]$$

where we write $\lambda \rightarrow_a \mu$ if there exists an i such that

$$\lambda_j = \mu_j \text{ for } i \neq j, \mu_i = \lambda_i + 1 \text{ and } \lambda_i - i + 1 \equiv a \pmod{p}.$$

Similar considerations, using the fact that

$$-n - \frac{1}{2}(b_{\mu-\chi_i} - b_{-\chi_n} - b_\mu) = \mu_i - i,$$

show that

$$(6.6) \quad [F_a] \cdot [\Delta(\mu)] = \sum_{\substack{\lambda \rightarrow_a \mu \\ \lambda \in \mathbf{X}^+}} [\Delta(\lambda)].$$

The relations $\varphi \circ [E_a] = e_a \circ \varphi$ and $\varphi \circ [F_a] = f_a \circ \varphi$ are now obtained by comparing formulas (6.1)–(6.2) with (6.5)–(6.6), and (2) is proved.

It remains to check (3). The weight of a vector

$$m_{\zeta_1} \wedge m_{\zeta_2} \wedge \cdots \wedge m_{\zeta_n} \in \bigwedge^n \text{nat}$$

is $k\delta + \sum_{i=1}^p n_i \varepsilon_i$, where $n_i = |\{j \mid \zeta_j \equiv i \pmod{p}\}|$ and $k = \sum_{i=1}^n \zeta_i^1$, where ζ_i^1 is uniquely defined so that $\zeta_i = p\zeta_i^1 + \zeta_i^0$ with $1 \leq \zeta_i^0 \leq p$. Now given two weights $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbf{X}^+$, the corresponding vectors

$$m_{\lambda_1} \wedge m_{\lambda_2-1} \wedge \cdots \wedge m_{\lambda_n-n+1} \quad \text{and} \quad m_{\mu_1} \wedge m_{\mu_2-1} \wedge \cdots \wedge m_{\mu_n-n+1}$$

belong to the same weight space if and only if the n -tuples $\lambda + \varsigma$ and $\mu + \varsigma$ can be related by permutations and addition of weights of the form $p(\chi_i - \chi_j)$ with $1 \leq i, j \leq n$. This is precisely the condition for λ and μ to be in the same (W, \bullet) -orbit on \mathbf{X} . \square

Remark 6.7. As seen in the proof of Proposition 6.5(3), the set of weights of the representation $\bigwedge^n \text{nat}$ is

$$P(\bigwedge^n \text{nat}) = \left\{ k\delta + \sum_{i=1}^p n_i \varepsilon_i : k \in \mathbb{Z}, n_i \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}, \sum_{i=1}^p n_i = n \right\},$$

and this set is in a natural bijection with $\mathbf{X}/(W, \bullet)$; we denote this bijection by

$$\iota_n : P(\bigwedge^n \text{nat}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{X}/(W, \bullet).$$

6.4. Rep(G) as a 2-representation. We now describe how the above action of the Lie algebra $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ on $\mathbb{C} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} [\text{Rep}(G)]$ can be upgraded to a categorical action of the Khovanov–Lauda–Rouquier 2-category $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$.

6.4.1. The degenerate affine Hecke algebra. Let \mathbb{F} be a field, let $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$, and let $\mathbb{F}[X_1, \dots, X_m]$ denote a polynomial ring, acted upon naturally by the symmetric group S_m . Let $s_i \in S_m$ denote the simple transposition $(i, i+1)$, and let

$$\partial_i(f) := \frac{f - s_i(f)}{X_{i+1} - X_i}$$

denote the Demazure operator. (Note that this is a slightly non-standard definition.) Recall that the degenerate affine Hecke algebra \overline{H}_m is the algebra which:

- (1) is isomorphic to $\mathbb{F}S_m \otimes_{\mathbb{F}} \mathbb{F}[X_1, \dots, X_m]$ as an \mathbb{F} -vector space;
- (2) has $\mathbb{F}S_m$ and $\mathbb{F}[X_1, \dots, X_m]$ as subalgebras;
- (3) satisfies the relation

$$T_i \cdot f - s_i(f) \cdot T_i = \partial_i(f)$$

for $1 \leq i \leq m-1$, where T_i denotes the element $s_i \in S_m$ viewed in \overline{H}_m .

Remark 6.8. (1) It is perhaps more aesthetically pleasing to define \overline{H}_m by generators and relations (in T_i 's for $1 \leq i \leq m-1$ and X_i 's for $1 \leq i \leq m$). For instance we have $T_i \cdot X_{i+1} = X_i \cdot T_i + 1$.

- (2) The degenerate affine Hecke algebra has a “polynomial” module

$$\overline{H}_m \otimes_{\mathbb{F}S_m} \mathbb{F} = \mathbb{F}[X_1, \dots, X_m]$$

where f acts by multiplication and T_i acts as

$$f \mapsto s_i(f) + \partial_i(f).$$

We can regard any \overline{H}_m -module as a quasi-coherent sheaf on the affine space $\mathrm{Spec} \mathbb{F}[X_1, \dots, X_m] = \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{F}}^m$. Given such a module M , we denote by M_a the submodule consisting of sections set-theoretically supported in the point $a \in \mathbb{A}_{\mathbb{F}}^m$. Let $\Gamma \subset \mathbb{F}$ denote the prime subring. We denote by $\overline{\mathcal{C}}_{\Gamma}$ the full subcategory of the category of \overline{H}_m -modules whose objects are the modules M such that

$$M = \bigoplus_{a \in \Gamma^m} M_a.$$

(In other words, $\overline{\mathcal{C}}_{\Gamma}$ is the category of \overline{H}_m -modules which are the direct sum of their generalized eigenspaces for each X_i , and such that all eigenvalues for all X_i belong to Γ .)

6.4.2. Unravelling Rouquier’s notation. Recall that we have fixed a field \mathbb{F} . We view the prime subring $\Gamma \subset \mathbb{F}$ as a quiver with arrows $i \rightarrow i+1$ for all $i \in \Gamma$. (Hence Γ is of type A_{∞} if \mathbb{F} is of characteristic 0, and is of type $\tilde{A}_{\ell-1}$ if \mathbb{F} is of characteristic $\ell > 0$.)

Let us write $i \dashrightarrow j$ if $i \rightarrow j$ or $j \rightarrow i$, and $i \not\rightarrow j$ if neither $i \rightarrow j$ nor $j \rightarrow i$. Then if we specialize the notation of [Ro, §§3.2.3–3.2.4] down to our situation we have:

- (1) $I = \tilde{I} = \Gamma$ and $a = \mathrm{id}$;
(2)

$$i \cdot j = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{if } i = j; \\ -1 & \text{if } i \dashrightarrow j; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

(the Cartan matrix);

- (3)

$$Q_{ij}(u, v) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i = j; \\ 1 & \text{if } i \neq j \text{ and } i \not\rightarrow j; \\ v - u & \text{if } i \rightarrow j; \\ u - v & \text{if } j \rightarrow i. \end{cases}$$

We define scalars t_{ij} for $i, j \in \Gamma$ with $i \neq j$ as follows:

$$t_{ij} = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } i \rightarrow j; \\ 1 & \text{if } j \rightarrow i \text{ or } i \not\rightarrow j. \end{cases}$$

6.4.3. The KLR algebra. Here we recall the definition of the quiver Hecke algebra (or KLR algebra) associated with Γ , see [Ro, §3.2.1]. As noted in [Ro, Remark 3.6] it is most natural to view the quiver Hecke algebra as a category; this is the approach we take here.

Let Γ^m denote the set of m -tuples of elements of Γ with its natural S_m -action. Consider the \mathbb{F} -linear category $H_m(\Gamma)$ with objects $\nu \in \Gamma^m$ and morphisms generated by morphisms

$$\begin{aligned} x_{z,\nu} &\in \text{End}(\nu) & \text{for } 1 \leq z \leq m, \\ \tau_{z,\nu} &\in \text{Hom}(\nu, s_z \nu) & \text{for } 1 \leq z < m, \end{aligned}$$

satisfying the following relations:

$$(6.7) \quad x_{z,\nu} x_{z',\nu} = x_{z',\nu} x_{z,\nu};$$

$$(6.8) \quad \tau_{z,s_z(\nu)} \tau_{z,\nu} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \nu_z = \nu_{z+1}; \\ 1_\nu & \text{if } \nu_z \neq \nu_{z+1} \text{ and } \nu_z \not\sim \nu_{z+1}; \\ t_{\nu_z, \nu_{z+1}} x_{z,\nu} + t_{\nu_{z+1}, \nu_z} x_{z+1,\nu} & \text{if } \nu_z \sim \nu_{z+1}; \end{cases}$$

$$(6.9) \quad \tau_{z,s_{z'}}(\nu) \tau_{z',\nu} = \tau_{z',s_z(\nu)} \tau_{z,\nu} \quad \text{if } |z - z'| > 1;$$

$$(6.10) \quad \begin{aligned} \tau_{z+1,s_z s_{z+1}(\nu)} \tau_{z,s_{z+1}(\nu)} \tau_{z+1,\nu} - \tau_{z,s_{z+1} s_z(\nu)} \tau_{z+1,s_z(\nu)} \tau_{z,\nu} \\ = \begin{cases} t_{\nu_z, \nu_{z+1}} \cdot 1_\nu & \text{if } \nu_z = \nu_{z+2} \sim \nu_{z+1}; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

$$(6.11) \quad \tau_{z,\nu} x_{z',\nu} - x_{s_z(z'), s_z(\nu)} \tau_{z,\nu} = \begin{cases} -1_\nu & \text{if } z = z' \text{ and } \nu_z = \nu_{z+1}; \\ 1_\nu & \text{if } z' = z + 1 \text{ and } \nu_z = \nu_{z+1}; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

(Here, 1_ν is the identity morphism of the object ν .)

6.4.4. Brundan–Kleshchev–Rouquier equivalence. A representation of $H_m(\Gamma)$ is by definition an \mathbb{F} -linear functor from $H_m(\Gamma)$ to the category of \mathbb{F} -vector spaces. In more concrete terms it consists of

- an \mathbb{F} -vector space V_ν for each $\nu \in \Gamma^m$;
- endomorphisms $x_{z,\nu}$ of V_ν for all $\nu \in \Gamma^m$ and $1 \leq z \leq m$;
- morphisms $\tau_{z,\nu}: V_\nu \rightarrow V_{s_z(\nu)}$ for all $\nu \in \Gamma^m$ and $1 \leq z < m$,

satisfying the relations from §6.4.3.

We write $H_m(\Gamma)\text{-Mod}_0$ for the full subcategory of the category of representations of $H_m(\Gamma)$ consisting of objects on which $x_{z,\nu}$ is locally nilpotent for all ν and $1 \leq z \leq m$. Recall that $\overline{\mathcal{C}}_\Gamma$ is the category of modules over the degenerate affine Hecke algebra \overline{H}_m whose spectrum is contained in Γ^m , see §6.4.1. Given $M \in \overline{\mathcal{C}}_\Gamma$ and $\nu \in \Gamma^m$ we denote by M_ν the generalized ν -eigenspace:

$$M_\nu := \{m \in M \mid (X_z - \nu_z)^N m = 0 \text{ for all } 1 \leq z \leq m \text{ and } N \gg 0\}.$$

The following theorem is due to Brundan–Kleshchev [BK] and Rouquier [Ro, Theorem 3.16].

Theorem 6.9. *There exists an equivalence of categories*

$$\overline{\mathcal{C}}_\Gamma \xrightarrow{\sim} H_m(\Gamma)\text{-Mod}_0$$

which associates to $M \in \overline{\mathcal{C}}_\Gamma$ the representation V defined by

- (1) $V_\nu = M_\nu$ for all $\nu \in \Gamma^m$;
- (2) $x_{z,\nu} := X_z - \nu_z$ for all $\nu \in \Gamma^m$ and $1 \leq z \leq m$;

(3) $\tau_{z,\nu}$ given by the formulas

$$\tau_{z,\nu} := \begin{cases} \frac{1}{1+X_z-X_{z+1}}(T_z - 1) & \text{if } \nu_z = \nu_{z+1}; \\ (X_z - X_{z+1})T_z + 1 & \text{if } \nu_{z+1} = \nu_z + 1; \\ \frac{X_z - X_{z+1}}{1+X_z-X_{z+1}}(T_z - 1) + 1 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

for all $\nu \in \Gamma^m$ and $1 \leq z < m$.

Remark 6.10. (1) There seems to be a typo in the third formula in [Ro, Theorem 3.16]. We follow the formulas of [Ro, Proposition 3.15].

(2) This theorem is a highly non-trivial calculation. It is not even obvious that the formulas in (3) do indeed give morphisms $\tau_{z,\nu}: M_\nu \rightarrow M_{s_i(\nu)}$.

6.4.5. *The 2-Kac-Moody algebra.* From now on we come back to the setting of §6.3. Recall in particular the affine Lie algebra $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ defined in §6.1. To the triple

$$(\mathfrak{h}, \{\alpha_i : i \in \{0, \dots, p-1\}\} \subset \mathfrak{h}^*, \{h_i : i \in \{0, \dots, p-1\}\} \subset \mathfrak{h})$$

Rouquier [Ro] has associated a strict \mathbb{k} -linear additive 2-category $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ categorifying (an idempotentated form of) the enveloping algebra of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$. The definition of this 2-category is recalled in [Br, Definition 1.1], and we will follow the (diagrammatic) notation from [Br]. This definition depends on the choice of some additional data; we choose them as follows:

- (1) our ground field is chosen to be \mathbb{k} ;
- (2) the scalars t_{ij} are given as in §6.4.2;
- (3) the scalars s_{ij}^{pq} are chosen identically zero.

The category $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ has objects P (the weights of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$, as defined in §6.1), generating 1-morphisms $E_i 1_\lambda: \lambda \rightarrow \lambda + \alpha_i$ (which we will depict as an upward arrow decorated by λ in the right region) and $F_i 1_\lambda: \lambda \rightarrow \lambda - \alpha_i$ (which we will depict as a downward arrow decorated by λ in the right region), and generating 2-morphisms

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow^\lambda \\ i \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \nearrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} i \quad \curvearrowright^\lambda \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowleft^\lambda \\ i \end{array}.$$

These 2-morphisms are required to satisfy a number of relations described in full in [Br, Definition 1.1]. Here we recall only the following relations.

$$(6.12) \quad \begin{array}{c} \nearrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} = \begin{cases} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} & \text{if } i = j; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

$$(6.13) \quad \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} \end{array} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i = j; \\ \begin{array}{c} \uparrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} & \text{if } i \neq j \text{ and } i \neq j; \\ t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} + t_{ji} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} & \text{if } i - j, \end{cases}$$

$$(6.14) \quad \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \quad k \end{array} \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \quad k \end{array} \end{array} = \begin{cases} t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow^\lambda \\ i \quad j \quad k \end{array} & \text{if } i = k - j; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

- Remark 6.11.* (1) As usual, we will write $E_i E_j 1_\lambda$ for $(E_i 1_{\lambda+\alpha_j}) \circ (E_j 1_\lambda)$, and similarly for other compositions of functors $E_k 1_\mu$ and $F_k 1_\mu$.
- (2) Unless otherwise indicated, our use of colors in this context is just to remind the reader that the labels of the strands might be different (but not necessarily).

By definition, a *representation* of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ is a \mathbb{k} -linear additive functor from $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ to the 2-category of \mathbb{k} -linear additive categories. More concretely, a representation consists of

- for each $\lambda \in P$, a \mathbb{k} -linear additive category \mathcal{C}_λ ;
- for each $\lambda \in P$ and each $i \in \{0, \dots, p-1\}$, additive functors

$$E_i 1_\lambda: \mathcal{C}_\lambda \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{\lambda+\alpha_i} \quad \text{and} \quad F_i 1_\lambda: \mathcal{C}_\lambda \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{\lambda-\alpha_i};$$

- for each $\lambda \in P$ and $i, j \in \{0, \dots, p-1\}$, morphisms of functors

$$x: E_i 1_\lambda \rightarrow E_i 1_\lambda, \quad \tau: E_i E_j 1_\lambda \rightarrow E_j E_i 1_\lambda, \quad \eta: \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}_\lambda} \rightarrow F_i E_i 1_\lambda, \quad \epsilon: E_i F_i 1_\lambda \rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}_\lambda};$$

these morphisms of functors satisfying the relations from [Br, Definition 1.1].

6.4.6. *Action of the degenerate affine Hecke algebra on powers of E .* The functor $EE = V \otimes V \otimes (-)$ on $\text{Rep}(G)$ has a natural endomorphism \mathbb{T} given by

$$\mathbb{T}_M: \begin{cases} EEM & \rightarrow & EEM \\ v \otimes v' \otimes m & \mapsto & v' \otimes v \otimes m \end{cases}.$$

Recall the endomorphism $\mathbb{X} \in \text{End}(E)$ constructed in §6.3. The following relation in $\text{End}(EE)$ is fundamental (see [CR, Lemma 7.21]):

$$(6.15) \quad \mathbb{T}_M \circ (V \otimes \mathbb{X}_M) - \mathbb{X}_{V \otimes M} \circ \mathbb{T}_M = -(V \otimes V \otimes M).$$

Recall also the degenerate affine Hecke algebra \overline{H}_m defined in §6.4.1, which we consider here in the case $\mathbb{F} = \mathbb{k}$.

Lemma 6.12. *For any $m \geq 1$, the assignment*

$$\begin{aligned} X_i &\mapsto V^{\otimes m-i} \otimes \mathbb{X}_{V^{\otimes i-1} \otimes M} \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq m, \\ T_i &\mapsto V^{\otimes m-i-1} \otimes \mathbb{T}_{V^{\otimes i-1} \otimes M} \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i < m \end{aligned}$$

extends to an algebra morphism $\overline{H}_m \rightarrow \text{End}(E^m)$.

Proof. The braid relations

$$T_i T_{i+1} T_i = T_{i+1} T_i T_{i+1} \quad \text{and} \quad T_i T_j = T_j T_i \quad \text{if } |i-j| > 1$$

are immediate, as are the relations $T_i^2 = 1$ for $1 \leq i \leq n$ and $X_i X_j = X_j X_i$ for all $1 \leq i, j \leq n$. Hence we only need to check the relation $T_i X_{i+1} = X_i T_i + 1$, or equivalently (since $T_i^2 = 1$) the relation $X_{i+1} T_i - T_i X_i = 1$. This equality follows from the definitions and (6.15). \square

6.4.7. *2-Kac-Moody action on $\text{Rep}(G)$.* Let $M \in \text{Rep}(G)$. It follows from Proposition 6.5(1) that, for $m \geq 1$, if we view (the underlying vector space of) $E^m M$ as a module over \overline{H}_m via Lemma 6.12, then $E^m M \in \overline{\mathcal{C}}_\Gamma$. In particular we can use Theorem 6.9 to deduce that, for any $m \geq 1$, the assignment

$$(\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z})^m \ni \nu = (\nu_1, \dots, \nu_m) \mapsto E_{\nu_m} E_{\nu_{m-1}} \cdots E_{\nu_1} M$$

can be upgraded to give an object in $H_m(\Gamma)\text{-Mod}_0$. Note that, in this construction, for any $m \geq 1$ the action of $x_{i,\nu}$ on $E_{\nu_m} E_{\nu_{m-1}} \cdots E_{\nu_1} M$ is induced by the endomorphism of E_{ν_i} given by the case $m = 1$ and $\nu = \nu_i$, and for any $m \geq 2$ the action of $\tau_{i,\nu}$ on $E_{\nu_m} E_{\nu_{m-1}} \cdots E_{\nu_1} M$ is induced by the morphism $E_{\nu_{i+1}} E_{\nu_i} \rightarrow E_{\nu_i} E_{\nu_{i+1}}$ given by the case $m = 2$, $\nu = (\nu_i, \nu_{i+1})$.

Recall the bijection ι_n from Remark 6.7. To each $\lambda \in P$ we associate a category as follows:

$$\lambda \mapsto \begin{cases} R_{\iota_n(\lambda)}(G) & \text{if } \lambda \in P(\bigwedge^n \text{nat}); \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Then, identifying $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ with $\{0, \dots, p-1\}$ in the natural way, for $i \in \mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ and $\lambda \in P$, to $E_i 1_\lambda$ we associate the functor

$$E_i^\lambda := E_{i|R_{\iota_n(\lambda)}(G)} : R_{\iota_n(\lambda)}(G) \rightarrow R_{\iota_n(\lambda+\alpha_i)}(G)$$

if λ and $\lambda + \alpha_i$ belong to $P(\bigwedge^n \text{nat})$ and 0 otherwise, and to $F_i 1_\lambda$ we associate the functor

$$F_i^\lambda := F_{i|R_{\iota_n(\lambda)}(G)} : R_{\iota_n(\lambda)}(G) \rightarrow R_{\iota_n(\lambda-\alpha_i)}(G)$$

if λ and $\lambda - \alpha_i$ belong to $P(\bigwedge^n \text{nat})$ and 0 otherwise. Finally, to the generating 2-morphisms

we associate 0 if one of the regions in the diagram is labelled by a weight which does not belong to $P(\bigwedge^n \text{nat})$, and otherwise the morphisms of functors

$$x_{1,i} \in \text{End}(E_i^\lambda), \quad \tau_{1,(j,i)} \in \text{End}(E_i^{\lambda+\alpha_j} E_j^\lambda),$$

$$\eta_i \in \text{Hom}(\text{id}_{R_{\iota_n(\lambda)}(G)}, F_i^{\lambda+\alpha_i} E_i^\lambda), \quad \epsilon_i \in \text{Hom}(E_i^{\lambda-\alpha_i} F_i^\lambda, \text{id}_{R_{\iota_n(\lambda)}(G)})$$

respectively. (Here, by abuse we denote by $x_{1,i}$, resp. $\tau_{1,(j,i)}$, the image of this element of $H_1(\Gamma)$, resp. of $H_2(\Gamma)$, in the corresponding morphism space obtained by the procedure described above.)

Theorem 6.13. *The above data define a 2-representation of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$.*

Proof. We have to check that our morphisms of functors satisfy the relations of [Br, Definition 1.1]. The relations (6.12)–(6.14) (corresponding to the relations [Br, (1.2)–(1.4)]) follow from the relations (6.7)–(6.11) in the KLR algebra. For instance, the relation

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{green line} \nearrow \text{black line} \\ \text{black line} \searrow \text{green line} \end{array} \quad - \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{green line} \nearrow \text{green line} \\ \text{black line} \searrow \text{black line} \end{array} = \begin{cases} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \uparrow \\ i \quad j \end{array} \quad \lambda & \text{if } i = j, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

in $\text{Hom}(E_i E_j, E_j E_i)$ follows from the relation

$$\tau_{1,(j,i)} \cdot x_{2,(j,i)} - x_{1,(i,j)} \cdot \tau_{1,(j,i)} = \begin{cases} 1_\nu & \text{if } i = j; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

in $H_2(\Gamma)$. Similarly, relation (6.13) follows from the relation

$$\tau_{1,(i,j)} \tau_{1,(j,i)} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } j = i; \\ 1_{(j,i)} & \text{if } j \neq i \text{ and } j \neq -i; \\ t_{ji} \cdot x_{1,(j,i)} + t_{ij} \cdot x_{2,(j,i)} & \text{if } j = -i \end{cases}$$

in $H_2(\Gamma)$, and relation (6.14) follows from the relation

$$\tau_{2,(i,k,j)} \tau_{1,(k,i,j)} \tau_{2,(k,j,i)} - \tau_{1,(j,i,k)} \tau_{2,(j,k,i)} \tau_{1,(k,j,i)} = \begin{cases} t_{i,j} \cdot 1_{(k,j,i)} & \text{if } k = i - j; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases}$$

in $H_3(\Gamma)$.

The “right adjunction relations” [Br, (1.5)] follow from the fact that ϵ_i and η_i are indeed adjunction morphisms, see Lemma 6.4. Finally, we need to check that the images of the 2-morphisms depicted in [Br, (1.7)–(1.9)] are isomorphisms. However, the datum of E_i and F_i and the appropriate morphisms defines an \mathfrak{sl}_2 -categorification in the sense of [Ro, Definition 5.20], so that the images of the 2-morphisms [Br, (1.8), (1.9)] are invertible by [Ro, Theorem 5.22 and its proof]. Then the invertibility of the image of [Br, (1.7)] is guaranteed by [Ro, Theorem 5.25 and its proof]. \square

6.4.8. *Comparison with the setting of Section 3.* Now we assume that $p \geq n \geq 2$, and set

$$\omega := \varepsilon_1 + \varepsilon_2 + \cdots + \varepsilon_n \in P(\bigwedge^n \text{nat}) \subset P.$$

Then $\imath_n(\omega)$ is the (W, \bullet) -orbit of the weight $(n, \dots, n) \in \mathbf{X}$. This weight belongs to the fundamental alcove $C_{\mathbb{Z}}$, so that following the notation of Section 3 we can denote it λ_0 , and the corresponding subcategory $\mathbf{R}_{\imath_n(\omega)}(G)$ can be denoted $\text{Rep}_0(G)$.

Remark 6.14. The category $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ is naturally equivalent to the block of the weight $0 \in \mathbf{X}$ via the functor $M \mapsto \det^{\otimes(-n)} \otimes M$.

For any $i \in \{1, \dots, n-1\}$ one can consider the functors

$$E_i^\omega : \mathbf{R}_{\imath_n(\omega)}(G) \rightarrow \mathbf{R}_{\imath_n(\omega + \alpha_i)}(G)$$

and

$$F_i^{\omega + \alpha_i} : \mathbf{R}_{\imath_n(\omega + \alpha_i)}(G) \rightarrow \mathbf{R}_{\imath_n(\omega)}(G).$$

Here $\imath_n(\omega + \alpha_i)$ is the orbit of the weight

$$\underbrace{(n, \dots, n, n+1)}_{n-i}, \underbrace{(n, \dots, n)}_{i-1} \in \mathbf{X}.$$

On the other hand, the Weyl group W_f identifies canonically with the symmetric group S_n , and the simple reflections identify with the simple transpositions $\{s_j, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1\}\}$. For any j , s_j is the reflection associated with the simple root

$$\chi_j - \chi_{j+1} = (\underbrace{0, \dots, 0}_{j-1}, 1, -1, \underbrace{0, \dots, 0}_{n-j-1})$$

of $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$. Hence we can set

$$\mu_{s_j} = (\underbrace{n, \dots, n}_j, n+1, \underbrace{n, \dots, n}_{n-j-1}),$$

so that $\imath_n(\omega + \alpha_i)$ is the W -orbit of $\mu_{s_{n-i}}$. Then, with the notation of Section 3, we have

$$T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_{s_j}} \cong E_{n-j}^\omega, \quad T_{\mu_{s_j}}^{\lambda_0} \cong F_{n-j}^{\omega + \alpha_{n-j}}$$

Hence we can simply set

$$\mathsf{T}^{s_j} := E_{n-j}^\omega, \quad \mathsf{T}_{s_j} := F_{n-j}^{\omega + \alpha_{n-j}}, \quad \Theta_{s_j} := F_{n-j}^{\omega + \alpha_{n-j}} E_{n-j}^\omega.$$

Consider now the case of the affine simple reflection $s_\infty \in W$. (See §7.1 below for an explanation of why we use the notation s_∞ instead of s_0 .) We can set

$$\mu_{s_\infty} = (p+1, n, \dots, n).$$

Then there exist isomorphisms of functors

$$(6.16) \quad T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_{s_\infty}} \cong E_0^{\omega+\alpha_n+\dots+\alpha_{p-1}} E_{p-1}^{\omega+\alpha_n+\dots+\alpha_{p-2}} \dots E_{n+1}^{\omega+\alpha_n} E_n^\omega,$$

$$(6.17) \quad T_{\mu_{s_\infty}}^{\lambda_0} \cong F_n^{\omega+\alpha_n} F_{n+1}^{\omega+\alpha_n+\alpha_{n+1}} \dots F_{p-1}^{\omega+\alpha_n+\dots+\alpha_{p-1}} F_0^{\omega+\alpha_n+\dots+\alpha_{p-1}+\alpha_0}.$$

For instance, let us explain how to construct an isomorphism as in (6.16); the construction for (6.17) is similar. By [Ja, Remark II.7.6(1)], the functor $T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_{s_\infty}}$ is isomorphic to the functor $\text{pr}_{\mu_{s_\infty}}(M \otimes \text{pr}_{\lambda_0}(-))$ for any M in $\text{Rep}(G)$ such that

$$\dim(M_{(p+1-n)\chi_1}) = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad M_\nu \neq 0 \Rightarrow \nu \leq (p+1-n)\chi_1.$$

(Here, \leq is the standard order on \mathbf{X} associated to our choice of positive roots.) For instance, the module $M = V^{\otimes(p+1-n)}$ satisfies these properties, so that $T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_{s_\infty}}$ is a direct factor of the functor $V^{\otimes(p+1-n)} \otimes (-)$. On the other hand, by construction the functor $E_n^{\omega+\alpha_0+\alpha_{p-1}+\dots+\alpha_{n+1}} \dots E_{p-1}^{\omega+\alpha_0} E_0^\omega$ is also a direct factor of the functor $V^{\otimes(p+1-n)} \otimes (-)$. Hence using inclusion and projection we can construct a morphism of functors

$$T_{\lambda_0}^{\mu_{s_\infty}} \rightarrow E_n^{\omega+\alpha_0+\alpha_{p-1}+\dots+\alpha_{n+1}} \dots E_{p-1}^{\omega+\alpha_0} E_0^\omega.$$

Now, using [Ja, Proposition II.7.15] one can easily check that this morphism induces an isomorphism on any simple object in $\text{Rep}_0(G)$, which implies that it is an isomorphism.

From these considerations we see that we can set

$$\mathsf{T}^{s_\infty} := E_0^{\omega+\alpha_n+\dots+\alpha_{p-1}} E_{p-1}^{\omega+\alpha_n+\dots+\alpha_{p-2}} \dots E_{n+1}^{\omega+\alpha_n} E_n^\omega,$$

$$\mathsf{T}_{s_\infty} := F_n^{\omega+\alpha_n} F_{n+1}^{\omega+\alpha_n+\alpha_{n+1}} \dots F_{p-1}^{\omega+\alpha_n+\dots+\alpha_{p-1}} F_0^{\omega+\alpha_n+\dots+\alpha_{p-1}+\alpha_0}.$$

The goal of Sections 7–8 is to show that, with these choices, if $p > n$ then Conjecture 5.1 holds.

7. RESTRICTION OF THE REPRESENTATION TO $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$

From now on we assume that $p \geq n \geq 3$.⁶ Our goal in this section is to show that the 2-representation of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ considered in Section 6 can be “restricted” to a 2-representation of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$. This technical result will simplify our computations in Section 8.

A similar construction in a more general setting is due to Maksimau [Ma]. For the reader’s convenience, we give a detailed proof.

7.1. Combinatorics. Since $n \leq p$, we can view $\mathfrak{sl}_n(\mathbb{C})$ as a Lie subalgebra of $\mathfrak{sl}_p(\mathbb{C})$ consisting of matrices all of whose non-zero entries are in the first n rows and columns. Since the trace form on $\mathfrak{sl}_p(\mathbb{C})$ restricts to the trace form on $\mathfrak{sl}_n(\mathbb{C})$, this embedding extends in a natural way to an embedding $\widehat{\mathfrak{sl}}_n \subset \widehat{\mathfrak{sl}}_p$ of Lie algebras, hence also to an embedding $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n \subset \widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$.

Let us write nat_n (resp. nat_p) for the natural representation of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ (resp. $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$). The restriction of nat_p to $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ via the above inclusion is isomorphic to the direct

⁶See Remark 1.9(1) for comments on this restriction.

sum of nat_n and infinitely many copies of the trivial representation. Hence the restriction of $\bigwedge^n \text{nat}_p$ to $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ contains a summand $\bigwedge^n \text{nat}_n$.

Let us describe this summand explicitly. The lattice of weights of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ embeds in a natural way in the lattice P of weights of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$. Via this embedding, the $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ -weights in nat_n are the weights of the form

$$\{\varepsilon_i + m\delta \mid 1 \leq i \leq n, m \in \mathbb{Z}\} \subset P.$$

If we write $\text{nat}_p^{[n]} \subset \text{nat}_p$ for the sum of the weight spaces corresponding to these weights, then this subspace is stable under the action of the Lie subalgebra $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n \subset \widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$, and we have a canonical identification $\text{nat}_n = \text{nat}_p^{[n]}$.

Similarly, let us consider the weights

$$(7.1) \quad \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^n n_i \varepsilon_i + m\delta : n_i \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}, \sum_{i=1}^n n_i = n, m \in \mathbb{Z} \right\} \subset P.$$

Then if $(\bigwedge^n \text{nat}_p)^{[n]} \subset \bigwedge^n \text{nat}_p$ is the sum of the weight spaces corresponding to these weights, it is easy to see that $(\bigwedge^n \text{nat}_p)^{[n]}$ is stable under the action of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ and that we have a canonical identification

$$\bigwedge^n \text{nat}_n = (\bigwedge^n \text{nat}_p)^{[n]}.$$

Of course the inclusion $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n \subset \widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ is not compatible with the Chevalley elements associated with the affine vertex 0 unless $n = p$. For this reason, to avoid confusion the affine vertex for $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ will be denoted ∞ instead of 0. The image of e_∞ and f_∞ in $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ are complicated commutators; however, one may express their action on the summand $\text{nat}_p^{[n]} \subset \text{nat}_p$ in terms of the Chevalley elements of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ as follows:

$$e_\infty \leftrightarrow e_0 e_{p-1} \cdots e_{n+1} e_n, \quad f_\infty \leftrightarrow f_n f_{n+1} \cdots f_{p-1} f_p.$$

(In other words, the complicated commutator expressing the image of e_∞ in $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$ has many terms which act by zero on $\text{nat}_p^{[n]} \subset \text{nat}_p$, and the above expression is all that remains.)

7.2. Categorifying the combinatorics. We now explain how the previous construction can be categorified. As in §6.3 we set $G = \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$, and let

$$\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G) \subset \text{Rep}(G)$$

denote the direct sum of the blocks corresponding to the weights in (7.1). We define functors $\tilde{E}_i : \text{Rep}^{[n]}(G) \rightarrow \text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)$ for $i \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{E}_i &:= E_i|_{\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)} \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq n-1; \\ \tilde{F}_i &:= F_i|_{\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)} \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq n-1; \\ \tilde{E}_\infty &:= (E_0 E_{p-1} \cdots E_{n+1} E_n)|_{\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)}; \\ \tilde{F}_\infty &:= (F_n F_{n+1} \cdots F_{p-1} F_p)|_{\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)}. \end{aligned}$$

(It is immediate to check that these functors preserve the subcategory $\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)$.)

Using the adjunctions (E_j, F_j) for all $j \in \{0, \dots, p-1\}$ we obtain adjunctions $(\tilde{E}_i, \tilde{F}_i)$ for all $i \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$. From Proposition 6.5 and the considerations of §7.1 we deduce the following.

Lemma 7.1. *On the Grothendieck group $[\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)]$, the exact functors \tilde{E}_i and \tilde{F}_i ($i \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$) induce an action of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$. Moreover, the resulting $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ -module is (canonically) isomorphic to $\bigwedge^n \text{nat}_n$.*

The goal of the rest of the section is to show that these functors (together with extra data to be defined below) endow $\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)$ with a structure of 2-representation of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$.

7.3. First relations. Some of our computations below will require an induction on n . So, for now we consider an integer m with $3 \leq m \leq p$. Let us consider the following subsets of the set P of weights of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$:

$$P_+ := \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^p n_i \varepsilon_i + k\delta : n_i \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}, k \in \mathbb{Z} \right\},$$

$$Y_m := \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^m n_i \varepsilon_i + k\delta : n_i \in \mathbb{Z}, k \in \mathbb{Z} \right\}.$$

We denote by $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ the quotient of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ by the objects which do not belong to P_+ . In other words, 2-morphisms in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ are obtained from the 2-morphisms in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ by quotienting by the 2-morphisms which contain a region labelled by an element $\lambda \in P \setminus P_+$ (or equivalently which factor through a 1-morphism factoring through an object $\lambda \in P \setminus P_+$). Note that in the 2-representation of Theorem 6.13, the category attached to a weight $\lambda \in P \setminus P_+$ is the zero category; therefore this 2-representation of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ factors through a 2-representation of $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$.

In the lemmas below, by abuse we sometimes use the diagrams for 2-morphisms in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ to denote their image in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$.

For $\gamma \in P$, we now set

$$(7.2) \quad E_{\infty_m} 1_\gamma := E_0 E_{p-1} \cdots E_m 1_\gamma, \quad F_{\infty_m} 1_\gamma := F_m F_{m+1} \cdots F_{p-1} F_0 1_\gamma.$$

The corresponding identity 2-morphisms (in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$) are denoted as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \gamma \\ \infty_m \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \quad \cdots \quad \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ 0 \quad p-1 \quad m+1 \quad m \end{array} \gamma, \quad \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \gamma \\ \infty_m \end{array} := \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ m \quad m+1 \quad p-1 \quad 0 \end{array} \gamma.$$

(If $m = p$, we interpret these diagrams as just an arrow labelled 0.) We define crossing 2-morphisms in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ involving this new element and $i \in \{1, \dots, m-1\}$

as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \nwarrow \\ i \quad \infty_m \end{array} \gamma & := & \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \dots \nwarrow \\ \nwarrow \dots \nearrow \\ i \quad 0 \quad m \end{array} \gamma, \\
 \begin{array}{c} \nwarrow \\ \nearrow \\ \infty_m \quad i \end{array} \gamma & := & \begin{array}{c} \nwarrow \dots \nearrow \\ \nearrow \dots \nwarrow \\ 0 \quad m \quad i \end{array} \gamma, \\
 \begin{array}{c} \nwarrow \\ \nearrow \\ \infty_m \quad \infty_m \end{array} \gamma & := & (-1)^{p-m} \begin{array}{c} \nwarrow \dots \nearrow \\ \nearrow \dots \nwarrow \\ 0 \quad m \quad 0 \quad m \end{array} \gamma.
 \end{array}$$

(Note the sign in the last definition.) Finally, we set

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ \infty_m \end{array} \gamma := \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \quad \dots \quad \uparrow \\ 0 \quad p-1 \quad m+1 \quad m \end{array} \gamma.$$

Lemma 7.2. *For any $\gamma \in P$, in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ we have*

$$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \infty_m \quad \infty_m \end{array} \gamma = 0.$$

Proof. We prove the claim by downward induction on m . If $m = p$ then the relation is an instance of (6.13). Now assume that $m < p$. Then we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \infty_m \quad \infty_m \end{array} \gamma = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \quad \nearrow \\ \searrow \quad \searrow \\ \infty_{m+1} \quad m \quad \infty_{m+1} \quad m \end{array} \gamma \stackrel{(*)}{=} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \quad \nearrow \\ \searrow \quad \searrow \\ m \quad m \end{array} \gamma + \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \quad \nearrow \\ \searrow \quad \searrow \\ m \quad m \end{array} \gamma,$$

where in $(*)$ we have used relation (6.13) for all crossings between the strand labelled by m and the strands (labelled by $0, \dots, m+1$) in the decomposition of the strand ∞_{m+1} . Now both terms in the right-hand side vanish, by induction and relation (6.13) respectively. \square

Lemma 7.3. *For any $\gamma \in Y_m$, in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ we have*

$$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \quad \nearrow \\ \searrow \quad \searrow \\ \infty_m \quad m-1 \quad \infty_m \end{array} \gamma = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \quad \nearrow \\ \searrow \quad \searrow \\ \infty_m \quad m-1 \quad \infty_m \end{array} \gamma + \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \infty_m \quad m-1 \quad \infty_m \end{array} \gamma.$$

Proof. We prove the formula by downward induction on m . If $m = p$, then the relation is an instance of (6.14). Now assume that $m < p$. We have

where the second equality uses many instances of the second case in (6.14), and the third one uses the first case in (6.14) and the fact that $t_{m,m-1} = 1$. Now we can use induction (since $\gamma + \alpha_m + \alpha_{m-1}$ belongs to Y_{m+1}) to write

By (6.13), the second term on the right-hand side is the desired term in the equality of the lemma. The first term vanishes in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ since it contains a region labelled by

$$\gamma + \alpha_m + \alpha_{m-1} + 2(\alpha_0 + \alpha_{p-1} + \cdots + \alpha_{m+1}) = \gamma + (\varepsilon_{m+1} - \varepsilon_{m-1}) + 2(\delta + \varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_{m+1}),$$

which does not belong to P_+ . \square

Lemma 7.4. *For any $\gamma \in Y_m$, in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ we have*

Proof. Once again we use downward induction on m . If $m = p$ then the equality is an instance of the second case in (6.14). Now we assume that $m < p$. Then we have

where the green strands are labelled by m . Using Lemma 7.3 (which is possible since $\gamma + 2\alpha_m$ belongs to Y_{m+1}), then Lemma 7.2 to omit the second term in the equality we obtain, and finally several instances of the second case in (6.14), we see

that

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ \infty_{m+1} \quad \infty_{m+1} \quad \infty_{m+1} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \\ \infty_{m+1} \quad \infty_{m+1} \quad \infty_{m+1} \end{array} .$$

Then we can use induction (which again is possible since $\gamma + 3\alpha_m$ belongs to Y_{m+1}), and again several instances of the second case in (6.14), to see that the equality one needs to conclude is

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ \infty_{m+1} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \\ \infty_{m+1} \end{array} .$$

In fact this equality follows from the first case in (6.14) applied to the strands labelled $m+1$ and m , remarking that the term coming from the right-hand side in this equality vanishes by the first case in (6.13). \square

The following lemma is a straightforward consequence of relation (6.14); details are left to the reader. (In this case we do not need any restriction on γ , and do not have to work in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$.)

Lemma 7.5. *For any $\gamma \in P$, in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ we have*

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ 1 \quad \infty_m \quad 1 \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \\ 1 \quad \infty_m \quad 1 \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3} \\ 1 \quad \infty_m \quad 1 \end{array} .$$

Lemma 7.6. *For any $\gamma \in P$, in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ we have*

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ m-1 \quad \infty_m \quad m-1 \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \\ m-1 \quad \infty_m \quad m-1 \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3} \\ m-1 \quad \infty_m \quad m-1 \end{array} .$$

Proof. If $m = p$ then this relation is an instance of the first case in (6.14). If $m \leq p-1$, it suffices to write the strand labelled ∞_m as a combination of strands labelled by ∞_{m+1} and m , to apply the first case in (6.14) to the strands labelled m and $m-1$, and then to use the second cases in (6.13) and in (6.14); details are left to the reader. \square

Lemma 7.7. *For any $\gamma \in Y_m$, in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ we have*

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ \infty_m \quad 1 \quad \infty_m \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \\ \infty_m \quad 1 \quad \infty_m \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3} \\ \infty_m \quad 1 \quad \infty_m \end{array} .$$

Proof. We prove the formula once again by downward induction on m . If $m = p$, then the relation is an instance of the first case in (6.14). Now assume that $m < p$. We have

by induction (which is applicable since $\gamma + 2\alpha_m \in Y_{m+1}$). In the final expression, using repeatedly the second case in (6.14) we see that the first term coincides with the first term in the right-hand side of the equality we wish to prove. Now, consider the second term. Using Lemma 7.6 and the second case in (6.13), we see that to conclude it suffices to prove that

in $\mathcal{U}_+(\hat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$. This follows from the fact that

$$\gamma + (\alpha_0 + \cdots + \alpha_{m+1}) = \gamma + (\delta + \varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_{m+1})$$

does not belong to P_+ . \square

We finish this subsection with two lemmas proving some relations involving dots.

Lemma 7.8. *For any $\gamma \in Y_m$, in $\mathcal{U}_+(\hat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ we have:*

Proof. We prove the second equality; the proof of the first one is similar. By definition we have

where the green strands are labelled by m . Using the second case in (6.12) to pull the green dot through the black strand, and then the first case in (6.12), we see

that the right-hand side is equal to

$$- \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \quad \nwarrow \\ \nwarrow \quad \nearrow \\ \infty_{m+1} \quad \infty_{m+1} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \quad \nwarrow \\ \nwarrow \quad \nearrow \\ \infty_{m+1} \quad \infty_{m+1} \end{array} \gamma = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \infty_m \quad \infty_m \end{array} \gamma - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \quad \nwarrow \\ \nwarrow \quad \nearrow \\ \infty_{m+1} \quad \infty_{m+1} \end{array} \gamma ,$$

where the equality follows from Lemma 7.3. (This result can be applied because $\gamma + \alpha_m$ belongs to Y_{m+1} .) To conclude it suffices to remark that the rightmost term vanishes in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ since it contains a region labelled by

$$\gamma + \alpha_m + 2(\alpha_{m+1} + \cdots + \alpha_0) = \gamma + (\varepsilon_{m+1} - \varepsilon_m) + 2(\delta + \varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_{m+1}),$$

which does not belong to P_+ . \square

The following lemma shows that, in the definition of the dotted arrow labelled by ∞_m , we could have put the dot of any strand.

Lemma 7.9. *For any $\gamma \in Y_m$, in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ we have*

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ 0 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ p-1 \end{array} \cdots \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ m+1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ m \end{array} \gamma = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ 0 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ p-1 \end{array} \cdots \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ m+1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ m \end{array} \gamma = \cdots = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ 0 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ p-1 \end{array} \cdots \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ m+1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ m \end{array} \gamma .$$

Proof. If $m = p$ there is nothing to prove. So, we assume that $m \leq p-1$.

Note that, for any $k \in \{m, \dots, p-1\}$, the weight

$$\gamma + \alpha_m + \cdots + \alpha_{k-1} + \alpha_{k+1} = \begin{cases} \gamma + \varepsilon_k - \varepsilon_m + \varepsilon_{k+2} - \varepsilon_{k+1} & \text{if } k \leq p-2 \\ \gamma + \varepsilon_{p-1} - \varepsilon_m + (\delta - \varepsilon_p + \varepsilon_1) & \text{if } k = p-1 \end{cases}$$

does not belong to P_+ (where $\alpha_p := \alpha_0$). Hence, using relation (6.13) we deduce that in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ we have

$$0 = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \cdots \quad \cdots \\ 0 \quad k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ m \end{array} \gamma = t_{k+1,k} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \cdots \quad \bullet \\ 0 \quad k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ m \end{array} \gamma + t_{k,k+1} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \cdots \quad \bullet \\ 0 \quad k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ m \end{array} \gamma$$

(where $t_{p,p-1} := t_{0,p-1}$ and $t_{p-1,p} := t_{p-1,0}$). The lemma now follows because $t_{ij} = -t_{ji}$ if $i - j$. \square

7.4. Restriction of the 2-representation to $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$. From now on we restrict to the case $m = n$, and write ∞ for ∞_n . We define the “cup” and “cap” 2-morphisms as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \infty \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \end{array} \gamma = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \quad \nwarrow \\ \nwarrow \quad \nearrow \\ n \quad 0 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \cdots \quad \cdots \\ n \quad 0 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ n \end{array} \gamma \end{array} , \quad \begin{array}{c} \infty \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \end{array} \gamma = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nwarrow \quad \nearrow \\ \nearrow \quad \nwarrow \\ 0 \quad n \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \cdots \quad \cdots \\ 0 \quad n \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ n \end{array} \gamma \end{array} .$$

We will view $\{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ as a quiver as follows:

$$(7.3) \quad \begin{array}{c} \infty \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ 1 \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow n-1 \end{array} .$$

We extend the definition of our scalars $t_{ij} \in \{\pm 1\}$ to $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ as follows:

$$t_{ij} = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } i \rightarrow j; \\ 1 & \text{if } j \rightarrow i \text{ or } i \nrightarrow j. \end{cases}$$

(This is clearly consistent with the notation from §6.4.2.)

Associated with these scalars we have the 2-category $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ as in [Br] (i.e. as in §6.4.5 with p replaced by n). Recall that our goal is to define a “restriction” of the 2-representation of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ (or in fact, as noticed above, of $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$) considered in Theorem 6.13 to $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$. In view of this, to a weight γ for $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ we associate the category $R_{\iota_n(\gamma)}(G)$ if γ is a weight of $\bigwedge^n \text{nat}_n$ (which we view as an element in P in the obvious way, see §7.1) or 0 otherwise. To a generator $E_i 1_\gamma$ (with $i \in \{1, \dots, n-1\}$) we associate the action on $R_{\iota_n(\gamma)}(G)$ of the element denoted similarly in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ via the action of Theorem 6.13 (or 0). When $i = \infty$ we proceed similarly, using the 1-morphism $E_\infty 1_\gamma$ defined in (7.2) (in the case $m = n$). Finally, to the various generating 2-morphisms of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we associate the action of the corresponding 2-morphisms in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ via this same action of Theorem 6.13 (or 0). The main result of the present section is the following.

Theorem 7.10. *These data define a 2-representation of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$.*

Proof. A large part of the work in view of proving Theorem 7.10 has been done in §7.3. In fact, we first need to check that, in our action on $\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)$, the generating 2-morphisms satisfy relations (6.12)–(6.14). Of course, it will suffice to prove that these relations hold in $\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$. To check one relation below we will use the following notation:

$$\Uparrow_\gamma := \begin{array}{cccc} \uparrow & \uparrow & \cdots & \uparrow \\ \parallel & \parallel & & \parallel \\ p-1 & p-2 & & n+1 & n \end{array} \quad \gamma.$$

(We interpret the right-hand side as an empty diagram in case $n = p$.)

Relation (6.12) follows directly from the corresponding relation in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$ in the case $i \neq j$ or $i = j \neq \infty$. And the case $i = j = \infty$ has been checked in Lemma 7.8.

Now we consider relation (6.13). If neither i nor j is ∞ then the relation follows directly from the corresponding relation in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$. Similarly, the relation is clear if i or j is ∞ and the other label belongs to $\{2, \dots, n-2\}$. The case $i = j = \infty$ has been checked in Lemma 7.2.

The remaining cases are $i = \infty, j \in \{1, n-1\}$ and $i \in \{1, n-1\}, j = \infty$. We do the case $i = 1, j = \infty$ and leave the (very similar) other cases to the reader:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1: } \text{A crossing of two strands labeled } 1 \text{ and } \infty \text{ with a dot on the } \infty \text{ strand.} \\ \text{Diagram 2: } \text{A crossing of two strands labeled } 1 \text{ and } 0 \text{ with a dot on the } 0 \text{ strand.} \\ \text{Diagram 3: } \text{A crossing of two strands labeled } 1 \text{ and } 0 \text{ with a dot on the } 0 \text{ strand and a thick arrow pointing up.} \\ \text{Diagram 4: } \text{A crossing of two strands labeled } 1 \text{ and } \infty \text{ with a dot on the } \infty \text{ strand.} \\ \text{Diagram 5: } \text{A crossing of two strands labeled } 1 \text{ and } \infty \text{ with a dot on the } \infty \text{ strand.} \end{array} = t_{1,0} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \parallel \\ 1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \parallel \\ \infty \end{array} \gamma + t_{0,1} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \parallel \\ 1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \parallel \\ \infty \end{array} \gamma.$$

Here the second equality follows from the second case in (6.13), and the third equality uses the third case in relation (6.13) and Lemma 7.9. We conclude using the fact that $t_{1,0} = t_{1,\infty}$ and $t_{0,1} = t_{\infty,1}$.

Next we consider relation (6.14). If i, j , and k all belong to $\{1, \dots, n-1\}$, the desired relation follows from the corresponding relation in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$. If $i \neq k$, then the relation is also a direct consequence of the corresponding relation in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$. If $i = k \neq j$ and $j \neq i$, the relation is also easy to check. The remaining cases are as follows:

- $i = j = k = \infty$: this case was checked in Lemma 7.4;
- $i = k = \infty$ and $j = n-1$: this case was checked in Lemma 7.3;
- $i = k = \infty$ and $j = 1$: this case was checked in Lemma 7.7;
- $i = k = 1$ and $j = \infty$: this case was checked in Lemma 7.5;
- $i = k = n-1$, $j = \infty$: this case was checked in Lemma 7.6.

To conclude the proof we observe that, as explained in the proof of Theorem 6.13, once the relations (6.12)–(6.14) are established the other relations follow automatically by general results due to (Chuang–)Rouquier. \square

8. FROM CATEGORICAL $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ -ACTIONS TO \mathcal{D}_{BS} -MODULES

In this section we continue with the setting of Sections 6–7, and we assume that $p > n \geq 3$.

8.1. Strategy. Our goal now is to finally prove that the categorical $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n$ -action on $\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)$ obtained from Theorem 7.10 induces an action of \mathcal{D}_{BS} on $\text{Rep}_0(G)$, where the weight λ_0 is chosen as in §6.4.8. In particular, this will prove Conjecture 5.1 in this case (see Remark 5.2(7)).

First, we consider a quotient of the 2-category $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ defined as follows. We denote by $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ the 2-category obtained from $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ by quotienting the 2-morphisms by those which contain a region labelled by a weight which is not of the form

$$\sum_{i=1}^n n_i \varepsilon_i + m \delta \quad \text{with } n_i \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}, \sum_{i=1}^n n_i = n, \text{ and } m \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Using conventions similar to those in Section 7, we will denote in the same way a morphism in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ and its image in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$. By construction (see §7.1), the 2-representation of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ considered in Theorem 7.10 factors through a 2-representation of $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$.

Recall now the category \mathcal{D}_{BS} defined in §4.2. We set

$$\omega := \varepsilon_1 + \dots + \varepsilon_n.$$

Then $\text{Rep}_0(G)$ is the category attached to ω in the 2-representation of $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ under consideration. Hence to conclude our proof it suffices to construct a strict monoidal functor

$$\sigma: \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}} \rightarrow \text{End}_{\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)}(\omega)$$

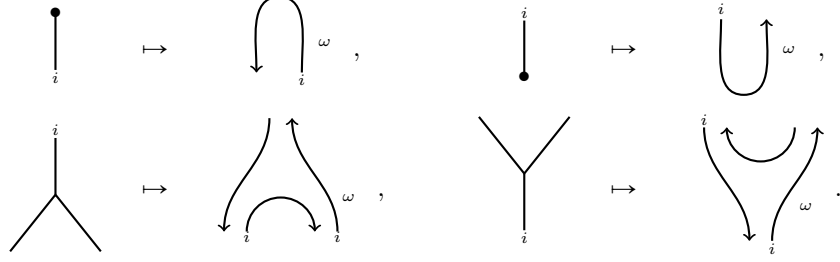
sending, for each $s \in S$, the object B_s to the corresponding functor $\mathbf{T}_s \mathbf{T}^s$ as defined in §6.4.8.

For this we identify the set S of simple reflections in W with the set $\{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ in such a way that any $j \in \{1, \dots, n-1\}$ corresponds to the transposition

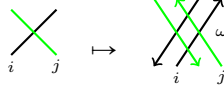
s_{n-j} , and that ∞ corresponds to the unique simple reflection in $S \setminus S_f$. Then, our requirement on images of objects B_s forces us to define σ on objects as follows⁷:

$$B_{(i_1, \dots, i_r)} \langle k \rangle \mapsto \downarrow_{i_1} \uparrow \cdots \downarrow_{i_r} \uparrow \omega.$$

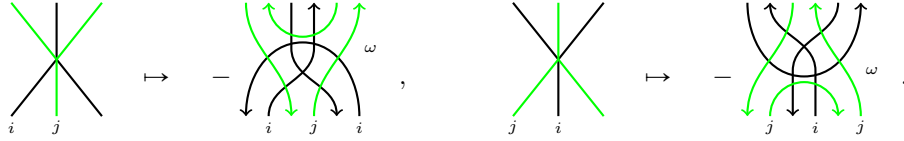
On the “dot” and trivalent morphisms, σ is defined as follows:



For $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ with $i \neq j$ (in the quiver described in (7.3)), σ is defined as follows:



Finally, for $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ with $j \rightarrow i$ (again in the quiver described in (7.3)), we define σ by:



(Here and below, all the 2-morphisms in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we consider are as defined in [Br], and we use the same notation.)

The main result of this section, which finishes the proof of Conjecture 5.1 in this case is the following.

Theorem 8.1. *The above assignment defines a strict monoidal functor*

$$\sigma: \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}} \rightarrow \text{End}_{\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)}(\omega).$$

Remark 8.2. The constructions in this section are inspired by a similar construction performed in [MT1, MT2] (following earlier work on the analogous finite case in [MSV]). However these authors use a different choice of constants t_{ij} ; therefore we provide a complete proof (which is slightly different from the proof in [MT1, MT2]).

To prove Theorem 8.1 the strategy is clear: we have a list of relations defining \mathcal{D}_{BS} as described in [EW2], and we need to verify that these relations are satisfied in $\text{End}_{\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)}(\omega)$ by the images of these morphisms.

⁷In what follows, in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$, an upward arrow will most of the time have a downward arrow labelled by the same element on its left; we indicate the label only once for simplicity.

8.2. Preliminary lemmas. For future reference, we first record the “sign rules” from [Br, (2.2), (2.9), (5.7), (5.8)]

Lemma 8.3. *For $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ we have the following sign rules in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$:*

$$(8.1) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cap with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{cap with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array},$$

$$(8.2) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} = t_{ji} \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cap with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} = t_{ji} \begin{array}{c} \text{cap with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array},$$

$$(8.3) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ j \quad i \end{array} = t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ j \quad i \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cap with green arrow } \lambda \\ j \quad i \end{array} = t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \text{cap with green arrow } \lambda \\ j \quad i \end{array},$$

$$(8.4) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ j \quad i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ j \quad i \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cap with green arrow } \lambda \\ j \quad i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{cap with green arrow } \lambda \\ j \quad i \end{array}.$$

We also recall that we do not have to distinguish on which side of a cup or cap a dot is put; see [Br, (2.1), (5.6)]; we will therefore write this dot in the middle.

The following relations (in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$) for $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ with $i \neq j$ are equivalent to the relation in [Br, (1.19)]:

$$(8.5) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cap with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{cap with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array}$$

The following relation (again in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$), for $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ with $i \neq j$, is a special case of [Br, Corollary 3.4] (taking into account [Br, (3.9)]):

$$(8.6) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i + \alpha_j = \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i + \alpha_j - \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i + \alpha_j$$

Lemma 8.4. *For $i, j, k \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$, in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have:*

$$(8.7) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \quad k \end{array} \omega = \begin{cases} -t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \text{cup with green arrow } \lambda \\ i \quad j \quad k \end{array} \omega & \text{if } i = k - j, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Proof. This follows from (6.14), using the fact that the first term in the left-hand side in this equation vanishes in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ since it contains a region labelled by $\omega + 2\alpha_i$. \square

Lemma 8.5. *For any $i \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$, in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have:*

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \\ \downarrow \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i = 2 \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ i \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i + \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \bullet \\ i \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i + \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \bullet \\ i \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i$$

Proof. By [Br, Corollary 3.4], in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \times \\ \omega + \alpha_i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \bullet \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i + \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \bullet \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i + \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \bullet \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i - \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i$$

(where all strands have color i). Then we notice that the left-hand side has a region labelled by $\omega + 2\alpha_i$, hence it vanishes in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$. Using the definition of negative dots in [Br, (3.9), (3.3)], what remains is precisely the relation in the lemma. \square

Lemma 8.6. *Let $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ with $i \rightarrow j$. Then in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have:*

$$(8.8) \quad \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \\ \downarrow \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j = \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ i \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j$$

Proof. Using [Br, (3.17), (3.8)] we have in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$:

$$\begin{array}{c} \times \\ \omega + \alpha_j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ i \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j - \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \\ \downarrow \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j$$

Then we observe that the left-hand side vanishes in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ since it contains a region labelled by $\omega + \alpha_j - \alpha_i$. \square

8.3. One color relations. The first relations we must consider are the one color relations. We remark that the Frobenius relations are immediate from the zigzag relations in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ (see [Br, (1.5) and Theorem 4.3]), or in other words from the fact that the dot and trivalent morphisms are induced by some adjunctions, see Remark 5.2(4). Next, the needle relation (i.e. the relation described in [EW2, (5.5)]) follows from the relation

$$\begin{array}{c} \circlearrowright \\ i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_i = 0$$

in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$, which is an application of [Br, (3.6)] since $\langle \omega + \alpha_i, h_i \rangle = 2$.

The polynomial relation (see [EW2, (5.2)]) follows from Lemmas 8.7, 8.8 and 8.9 below, see Remark 4.3.

Lemma 8.7. *For any $i \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ we have*

$$\sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \bullet \end{array} \middle| + \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \bullet \end{array} \right) = 2 \sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \bullet \end{array} \right)$$

(where all strands have label i).

Proof. By Lemma 8.5, in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have

$$(8.9) \quad \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \circlearrowright \end{array} = \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} + \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} + \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} = \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} + 2 \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array}.$$

Similarly, in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} = \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} + 2 \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array}.$$

On the other hand, again by Lemma 8.5, in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have

$$(8.10) \quad \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ \cap \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} = \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} + \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} + \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array}.$$

We deduce that in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have

$$\left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \circlearrowright \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} = 2 \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ \cap \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array},$$

which is the desired equality. \square

Lemma 8.8. *For any $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ with $i - j$ we have:*

$$\sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{green line} \\ j \quad i \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ i \end{array} \right) = \sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ i \quad i \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{green line} \\ i \quad j \end{array} \right).$$

Proof. Applying the relations (8.5), (8.1) and (8.3), and then (6.13) and [Br, (1.21)], we have, since $t_{ij}t_{ji}^{-1} = -1$,

$$\left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \text{green circle } j \end{array} = t_{ji}^{-1} \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \text{green circle } j \end{array} = \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \text{green circle } j \end{array} - \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array}.$$

Similarly, using [Br, (2.7)] we have:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{green circle } j \\ \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} = \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \text{green circle } j \end{array} - \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array}.$$

Hence in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{green circle } j \\ \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} - \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \text{green circle } j \end{array} = \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} - \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} = \left| \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ \cap \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \omega \\ \bullet \end{array}$$

by (8.9) and (8.10). This is easily seen to imply the relation in the lemma. \square

The proof of the following lemma is similar to (and in fact simpler than) that of Lemma 8.8; it is therefore left to the reader.

Lemma 8.9. *For any $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ with $i \neq j$ and $i \neq j$ we have:*

$$\sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ | \\ j \quad i \end{array} \right) = \sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} | \\ \bullet \\ i \quad j \end{array} \right).$$

8.4. Cyclicity. Now we prove that the images under σ of the 4-valent and 6-valent vertices are cyclic. The case of the 4-valent vertices is easy, and left to the reader. So, we concentrate on the 6-valent vertices.

We fix $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ with $j \rightarrow i$. Then in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have

where the first equality uses each of the four sign rules in Lemma 8.3 once, and the second equality follows from (8.2) and (8.4).

Using similar computations, we have

These relations imply that indeed the 6-valent vertices are cyclic.

8.5. Jones–Wenzl relations. Now we turn to the Jones–Wenzl relations, i.e. the relations described in [EW2, (5.7)]. In our specific situation, these relations are described in the following proposition.

Proposition 8.10. *Let $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ with $i \neq j$.*

(1) *If $i \neq j$ we have:*

$$\sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ i \quad j \end{array} \right) = \sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ i \quad j \end{array} \right).$$

(2) *If $i = j$ we have:*

$$\sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ i \quad j \quad i \end{array} \right) = \sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ | \\ i \quad j \quad i \end{array} \right) + \sigma \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ i \quad j \quad i \end{array} \right).$$

Proof. (1) follows from Lemma 8.3, (8.5) and (6.13); details are left to the reader. Now we consider (2). We treat the cases $i \rightarrow j$ and $j \rightarrow i$ separately.

Case 1: $j \rightarrow i$. The left-hand side of the desired equality is

$$\begin{aligned}
 & - \text{Diagram 1} \stackrel{(8.3)}{=} -t_{ji}^{-1} \text{Diagram 2} \stackrel{(8.7)}{=} t_{ij}t_{ji}^{-1} \text{Diagram 3} \\
 & \stackrel{(8.6)+(8.4)+(8.5)}{=} -t_{ij}t_{ji}^{-1} \text{Diagram 4} + t_{ij}t_{ji}^{-1} \text{Diagram 5} \\
 & \stackrel{(8.5)+(8.2)}{=} \text{Diagram 6} + t_{ij} \text{Diagram 7}
 \end{aligned}$$

The diagrams are string diagrams with three strands labeled i, j, i from left to right. Green arrows indicate the direction of flow. Diagram 1 shows a crossing between the first and second strands. Diagram 2 shows a crossing between the second and third strands. Diagram 3 shows a crossing between the first and second strands. Diagram 4 shows a crossing between the first and second strands. Diagram 5 shows a crossing between the second and third strands. Diagram 6 shows three parallel strands. Diagram 7 shows a crossing between the first and second strands.

(where in the fourth equality we also use that $t_{ij}t_{ji}^{-1} = -1$).

The first term is as expected. We simplify the second term further as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & t_{ij} \text{Diagram 8} \stackrel{(8.8)}{=} t_{ij} \text{Diagram 9} \\
 & \stackrel{(8.2)+(8.4)+(8.5)}{=} \text{Diagram 10}
 \end{aligned}$$

Diagram 8 shows a crossing between the first and second strands. Diagram 9 shows a crossing between the second and third strands. Diagram 10 shows three parallel strands.

Hence we are done in this case.

Case 2: $i \rightarrow j$. Using (8.3) and the third case in (6.13), we see that

$$- \text{Diagram 11} = -t_{ji}^{-1}t_{ji} \text{Diagram 12}$$

Diagram 11 shows a crossing between the first and second strands. Diagram 12 shows a crossing between the second and third strands.

(In fact, the second term coming from the application of (6.13) vanishes due to the first case in (6.13).) Now, using (6.12), the same vanishing property as above, and

the sign rule (8.2), we see that the right-hand side here is equal to

$$(8.11) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \end{array} \stackrel{(8.6)}{=} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3} \end{array}.$$

We now analyze the second term in the right-hand side of (8.11). Using the sign rules (8.1), (8.2) and (8.3) and (8.5), we see that

$$- \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 4} \end{array} = -t_{ij}^{-1} t_{ji} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 5} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 6} \end{array}.$$

Finally we analyze the first term in the right-hand side of (8.11). Here we use (8.6) (in which the left-hand side vanishes in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\hat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ in case $i \rightarrow j$ since it contains a region labelled by $\omega + 2\alpha_i + \alpha_j$) and then the sign rule (8.1) and (8.5), to see that

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 7} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 8} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 9} \end{array}.$$

The proposition is proved. \square

8.6. Two color associativity. We now turn to the “two color associativity” relations, see [EW2, (5.6)]. As for the Jones–Wenzl relations, these relations are associated with pairs (i, j) of elements in $\{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ with $i \neq j$. In the case when $i \neq j$, these relations are easy and left to the reader. Now we assume that $i = j$.

Once one has the Jones–Wenzl relations and the one colour relations, one can check that the two color associativity relations associated with the pair (i, j) is implied by the following relation:

$$(8.12) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 10} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 11} \end{array}$$

(see e.g. [EK, Example 3.7]). If we denote the left hand side of (8.12) by a box, it is easy to see, using cyclicity, that this relation is equivalent to the relation:

$$(8.13) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \end{array} .$$

Diagram 1: A square box with four vertical lines passing through it. The top two lines are green and the bottom two are black. The leftmost black line has a loop that goes up, around the box, and back down. The rightmost green line has a loop that goes up, around the box, and back down. The bottom lines are labeled from left to right: i, j, i, j .

Diagram 2: A square box with four vertical lines passing through it. The top two lines are black and the bottom two are green. The leftmost black line has a loop that goes up, around the box, and back down. The rightmost green line has a loop that goes up, around the box, and back down. The bottom lines are labeled from left to right: i, j, i, j .

In order to prove this relation we need some preparatory lemmas.

Lemma 8.11. *Suppose that $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ and that $j \rightarrow i$.*

(1) *In $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have*

$$(8.14) \quad \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \omega + 2\alpha_i + \alpha_j = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ \text{Diagram 2} \end{array} \omega + 2\alpha_i + \alpha_j + R$$

Diagram 1: A crossing of two lines, with the top line labeled i and the bottom line labeled i . The crossing is such that the line from i to i goes from top-left to bottom-right.

Diagram 2: A crossing of two lines, with the top line labeled i and the bottom line labeled i . The crossing is such that the line from i to i goes from top-right to bottom-left.

where R is a linear combination of terms of the form $\boxed{f} \omega + 2\alpha_i + \alpha_j$

and $\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ \boxed{f'} \end{array} \omega + 2\alpha_i + \alpha_j$ for some $f \in \text{Hom}(\text{id}, E_i F_i)$ and $f' \in \text{Hom}(E_i F_i, \text{id})$.

(2) *In $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have*

$$(8.15) \quad \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \omega - \alpha_i + \alpha_j = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ \text{Diagram 2} \end{array} \omega + 2\alpha_i + \alpha_j + R$$

Diagram 1: A crossing of two lines, with the top line labeled i and the bottom line labeled i . The crossing is such that the line from i to i goes from top-left to bottom-right.

Diagram 2: A crossing of two lines, with the top line labeled i and the bottom line labeled i . The crossing is such that the line from i to i goes from top-right to bottom-left.

where R is a linear combination of terms of the form $\boxed{f} \omega + 2\alpha_i + \alpha_j$ and

$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ \boxed{f'} \end{array} \omega + 2\alpha_i + \alpha_j$ for some $f \in \text{Hom}(\text{id}, F_i E_i)$ and $f' \in \text{Hom}(F_i E_i, \text{id})$.

Proof. We remark that in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram} \end{array} \omega + 2\alpha_i + \alpha_j = 0$$

Diagram: A crossing of two lines, with the top line labeled i and the bottom line labeled i . The crossing is such that the line from i to i goes from top-left to bottom-right.

since this diagram contains a region labelled by $\omega + 3\alpha_i + \alpha_j$. Then (8.14) follows from [Br, (3.16)]. (In our case we have $\langle \omega + 2\alpha_i + \alpha_j, h_i \rangle = 3$.)

The proof of (8.15) is similar, using [Br, (3.17)] instead of [Br, (3.16)]. \square

Lemma 8.12. *Suppose that $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ and that $j \rightarrow i$. Then in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have*

$$(8.16) \quad \begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ \text{Diagram 1} \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j = \begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ \text{Diagram 2} \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j .$$

Proof. By (8.14), in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have

$$\begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ \text{Diagram 3} \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j = \begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ \text{Diagram 4} \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j .$$

(The terms denoted R in (8.14) do not contribute by the first case in (6.13) and its “reversed” counterpart [Br, (2.7)].) On the other hand, by the nil Hecke relations (6.12) and (6.13) and their “reversed” counterparts (see [Br, (2.6)–(2.7)]), in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have:

$$\begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ \text{Diagram 5} \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j = \begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ \text{Diagram 6} \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j$$

Combining these equalities gives (8.16). \square

Lemma 8.13. *Suppose that $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$ and that $j \rightarrow i$. Then in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have:*

$$(8.17) \quad \begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ \text{Diagram 7} \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j = \begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ \text{Diagram 8} \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j .$$

Proof. First we note that, by [Br, (3.17)], in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have

$$(8.18) \quad \begin{array}{c} i \\ \downarrow \quad \uparrow \\ \text{Diagram 9} \\ \uparrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j = \begin{array}{c} i \\ \downarrow \quad \uparrow \\ \text{Diagram 10} \\ \uparrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j - \begin{array}{c} i \\ \downarrow \quad \uparrow \\ \text{Diagram 11} \\ \uparrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_j .$$

Using the first case in (6.13), we deduce that

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1: A strand from bottom-left to top-right crosses over a vertical strand from bottom to top. Both strands are labeled } i \text{ at their ends.} \end{array} \quad \omega + \alpha_j \quad \stackrel{(8.18)}{=} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2: A vertical strand from bottom to top crosses over a strand from bottom-left to top-right. Both strands are labeled } i \text{ at their ends.} \end{array} \quad \omega + \alpha_j \quad \stackrel{(*)}{=} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3: A vertical strand from bottom to top crosses over a strand from bottom-left to top-right. Both strands are labeled } i \text{ at their ends.} \end{array} \quad \omega + \alpha_j \\
 \\
 \stackrel{(8.6)}{=} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 4: A vertical strand from bottom to top crosses over a strand from bottom-left to top-right. Both strands are labeled } i \text{ at their ends.} \end{array} \quad \omega + \alpha_j \quad ,
 \end{array}$$

where $(*)$ follows from [Br, (2.4)]. Attaching a rightward cap to the top right strand and a rightward cup to bottom left strand and using [Br, (1.6) & (1.13)], we also obtain that

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 5: A vertical strand from bottom to top crosses over a strand from bottom-left to top-right. Both strands are labeled } i \text{ at their ends.} \end{array} \quad \omega + \alpha_i + \alpha_j \quad = \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 6: A vertical strand from bottom to top crosses over a strand from bottom-left to top-right. Both strands are labeled } i \text{ at their ends.} \end{array} \quad \omega + \alpha_i + \alpha_j \quad .$$

Using these relations (and again (6.13) and its “reversed” counterpart [Br, (2.7)]) we see that the left diagram in (8.17) (seen in $\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$) is equal to

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 7: A complex diagram with multiple crossings and dots. Labeled } i \text{ at ends.} \end{array} \quad \omega + \alpha_j \quad \stackrel{(8.15)}{=} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 8: A complex diagram with multiple crossings and dots. Labeled } i \text{ at ends.} \end{array} \quad \omega + \alpha_j \quad = \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 9: A complex diagram with multiple crossings and dots. Labeled } i \text{ at ends.} \end{array} \quad \omega + \alpha_j \\
 \\
 = \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 10: A simplified diagram with two vertical strands and two horizontal arcs. Labeled } i \text{ at ends.} \end{array} \quad \omega + \alpha_j \quad ,
 \end{array}$$

where the last equality follows from (6.12) and [Br, (2.6)]. This finishes the proof. \square

We can finally prove (8.13).

Proof of (8.13). We proceed as follows: we first simplify the picture for the box in (8.13), and then check the relation on this simplified picture.

Case 1: $j \rightarrow i$. The left hand side of (8.12) is:

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ \omega \end{array} & \stackrel{(8.5)}{=} & \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \\ \omega \end{array} & \stackrel{(*)}{=} & \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3} \\ \omega \end{array} \\
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 4} \\ \omega \end{array} & \stackrel{(8.2)+(8.3)}{=} & t_{ij}^{-1} t_{ji} & \stackrel{(8.16)}{=} & t_{ij}^{-1} t_{ji} \\
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

Here, $(*)$ follows from [Br, (1.20)], which allows to omit the central bubble.

Using this description of the box in (8.13), it is a matter of bookkeeping to check that the relation holds. For instance, using the relations (8.1)–(8.4) exactly once on each side (and the fact that any part of a diagram involving only one color is isotopy-invariant), one can check that both sides in (8.13) are equal to

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 5} \\ \omega \end{array}
 \end{array}
 ,$$

hence that they coincide.

Case 2: $i \rightarrow j$. The left hand side of (8.12) is

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1: A braid with 4 strands. Top to bottom: } i, j, i, j. \text{ Bottom to top: } j, i, j, i. \text{ Strands } i \text{ and } j \text{ cross each other twice. A green loop labeled } \omega \text{ is on the right.} \end{array} & \stackrel{(8.5)+(8.2)+(8.3)}{=} & \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2: Similar to Diagram 1, but with a green loop labeled } \omega \text{ on the left.} \end{array} \\
 & & \stackrel{(8.17)}{=} & \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3: Similar to Diagram 2, but with a green loop labeled } \omega \text{ on the right.} \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

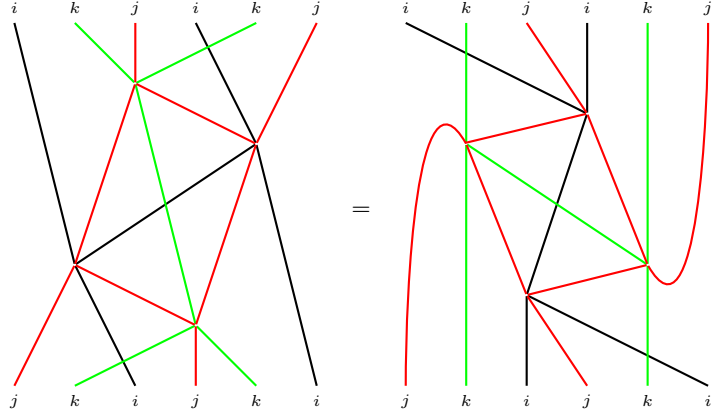
$t_{ji}t_{ij}^{-1}$

(Here, the second equality again also uses the fact that the central part of the diagram involving only j is isotopy-invariant.) Using this expression for the box in (8.13), it is again bookkeeping to check that the relation holds. \square

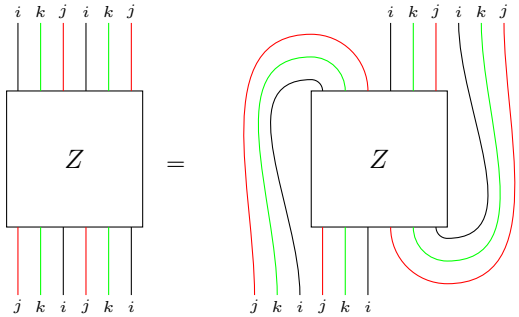
8.7. Zamolodchikov (three colour) relations. The Zamolodchikov relations are associated with triples (i, j, k) of pairwise distinct elements of $\{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$, see [EW2, (5.8)–(5.12)]. The precise form of the relation depends on the type of the parabolic subgroup of W generated by s_i, s_j and s_k . The cases when this subgroup is of type $\mathbf{A}_1 \times \mathbf{A}_1 \times \mathbf{A}_1$ or $\mathbf{A}_2 \times \mathbf{A}_1$ are easy, and left to the reader. (In fact, in these cases, the relation follows from the observation that in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ one can pull a strand labelled i through any crossing of strands labelled j and k if $i \neq j, i \neq k, i \neq k$ and $i \neq k$; see Lemma 8.14 below and its proof.)

Now we consider the case when the subgroup is of type \mathbf{A}_3 . To fix notation, we assume that $i - j - k$ and $i \neq k$. In this case, using cyclicity, the relation (stated

in [EW2, (5.10)]) can be equivalently formulated as the following equality:

(8.19) 

It can easily checked that if this relation is known for a triple (i, j, k) as above, then the relation follows for the triple (k, j, i) . Hence it suffices to consider the case $k \rightarrow j \rightarrow i$. Moreover, if we denote the left hand side in (8.19) by \boxed{Z} , then we can restate this relation as the following equality:

(8.20) 

This is the relation that we will check below (in the case $k \rightarrow j \rightarrow i$); this will finish the proof of Theorem 8.1.

We start with some preliminary lemmas. In the first statement, i, j, k are arbitrary elements of $\{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$.

Lemma 8.14. *For $i, j, k \in \{1, \dots, n-1, \infty\}$, in $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have*

$$(8.21) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda \quad \text{unless } i = k \text{ and } i \text{ --- } j;$$

$$(8.22) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 4} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda \quad \text{unless } i = k \text{ and } i \text{ --- } j;$$

$$(8.23) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 5} \\ \text{strand } k \text{ (green), } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red)} \end{array} \lambda = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 6} \\ \text{strand } k \text{ (green), } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red)} \end{array} \lambda \quad \text{unless } j = k \text{ and } k \text{ --- } i;$$

$$(8.24) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 7} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda = \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 8} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda \quad \text{unless } i = j = k;$$

$$(8.25) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 9} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda = \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 10} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda \quad \text{unless } i = j = k;$$

$$(8.26) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 11} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda = \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 12} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda \quad \text{unless } i = j \text{ and } j \text{ --- } k;$$

$$(8.27) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 13} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda = \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 14} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda \quad \text{unless } i = j \text{ and } j \text{ --- } k;$$

$$(8.28) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 15} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda = \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 16} \\ \text{strand } i \text{ (black), } j \text{ (red), } k \text{ (green)} \end{array} \lambda \quad \text{unless } j = k \text{ and } k \text{ --- } i.$$

Proof. Equality (8.21) is a special case of (6.14), (8.22) is a special case of [Br, 2.8] and (8.23) is a special case of [Br, (2.4)]. Equality (8.26) can be obtained from (8.21) (applied to strands j, k and i from left to right) by adding a leftward cup to the right and a leftward cap to the left. Equalities (8.27) and (8.28) can be deduced from (8.22) by a similar procedure.

To prove (8.24), we distinguish two cases. First, assume that $j \neq k$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array} \stackrel{(8.5)}{=} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array} = \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 4: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array} \\
 & \stackrel{(8.21)}{=} \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 5: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array} \stackrel{(8.5)}{=} \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 6: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array}
 \end{aligned}$$

Here we have used the zigzag relations [Br, (1.5),(4.8)] and the sign relations of Lemma 8.3 multiple times.

Now, assume that $j \neq i$. Then, by similar arguments, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array} = \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 4: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array} \\
 & \stackrel{(8.21)}{=} \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 5: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array} = \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 6: } \lambda \text{ with strands } i, j, k \text{ and a red loop on } j. \end{array}
 \end{aligned}$$

Equality (8.25) can be proved similarly, starting from [Br, (2.8)] instead of (6.14); details are left to the reader. \square

Lemma 8.15. *Assume that $k \rightarrow j \rightarrow i$. Then in $\mathcal{U}(\hat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$ we have*

$$(8.29) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1: } \omega + \alpha_k + 2\alpha_j \text{ with strands } i, i, i, i. \end{array} = - \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2: } \omega + \alpha_k + 2\alpha_j \text{ with strands } i, i, i, i. \end{array}$$

Proof. Using [Br, (3.17)], then (6.14) (and its reversed counterpart [Br, (2.8)]) and finally [Br, (3.16)] on both sides we see that

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \begin{array}{c} i \\ \uparrow \\ \text{Diagram 1} \\ \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_k + 2\alpha_j = - \begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \text{Diagram 2} \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_k + 2\alpha_j \\
 & = - \begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \text{Diagram 3} \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_k + 2\alpha_j = - \begin{array}{c} i \quad i \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \text{Diagram 4} \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad i \end{array} \omega + \alpha_k + 2\alpha_j .
 \end{aligned}$$

□

Proof of (8.20) in the case $k \rightarrow j \rightarrow i$. We proceed as in the proof of the “2 color associativity” relation: namely we first simplify the diagram for the box in (8.20), and then check the relation with this simplified diagram.

The manipulations for this simplification are described in Figure 1. In these manipulations we work “up to sign”, so that we do not need to be careful with the sign relations in Lemma 8.3. More generally, this means that the diagrams become isotopy-invariant.

Now we justify the various equalities:

- Equality (1) follows from 18 applications of the “Reidemeister moves” of Lemma 8.14 to move the vertical green strands to the right and the left of the diagram.
- Equality (2) follows from (8.24) and (8.25), used to pull the black strands through the crossings of red strands in the middle of the diagram.
- Equality (3) follows from [Br, (3.17)] (applied in the middle of the diagram, for the weight $\omega + \alpha_i + \alpha_j + \alpha_k$ and the color j).
- Equality (4) follows from the following manipulation together with its 180 degrees rotation (which can be checked similarly):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 5} \end{array} \stackrel{(8.5)}{=} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 6} \end{array} \stackrel{(8.24)}{=} \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 7} \end{array} \stackrel{(8.26)}{=} \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 8} \end{array} .$$

- To prove (5), on the right part of the diagram we use the relation

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 9} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 10} \end{array} + t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 11} \end{array} ,$$

see (6.14), and then check (using [Br, (3.16)] and then (6.13)) that the term coming from the rightmost diagram vanishes. Then we do a similar

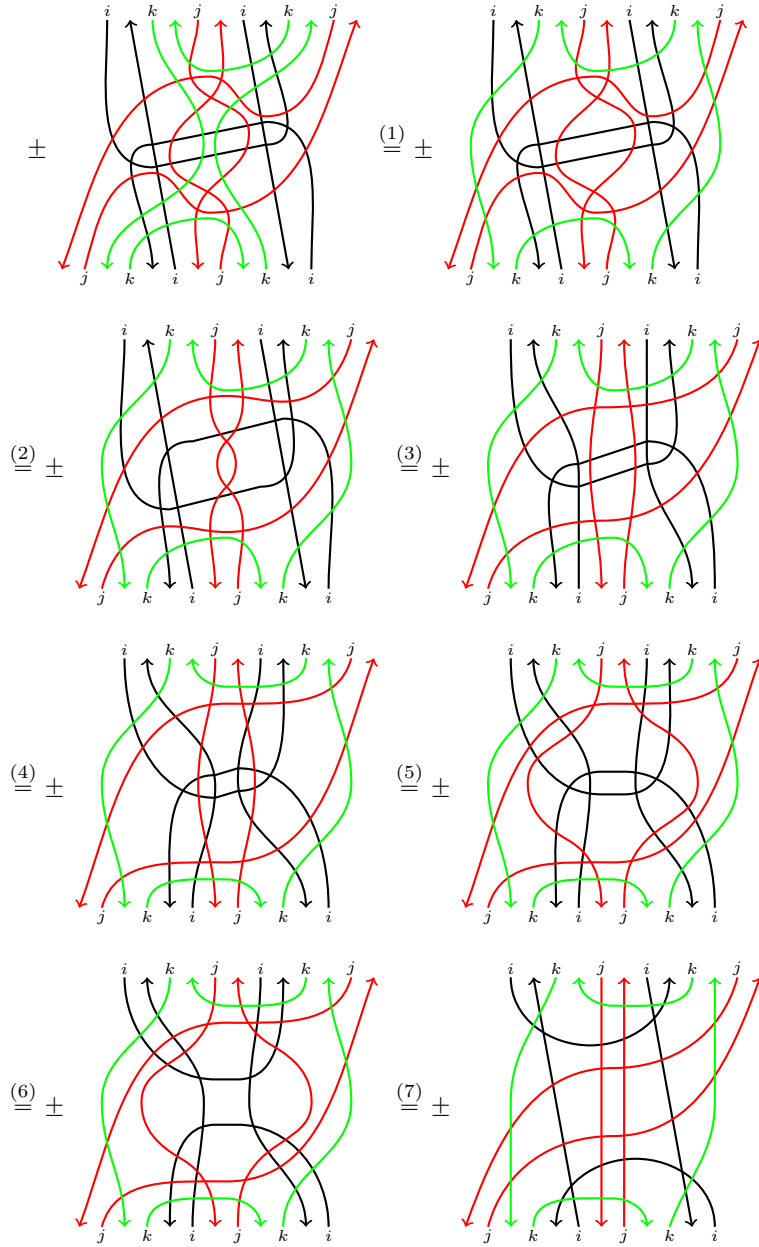


FIGURE 1. Manipulations for the proof of (8.20).

manipulation on the left part of the diagram using the reversed variants of these relations, see [Br, (2.7), (2.8)].

- Equality (6) follows from Lemma 8.15.

- In equality (7) we use the relation

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \end{array} \stackrel{(8.24)}{=} \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \end{array} \stackrel{(8.26)+(8.5)}{=} \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3} \end{array},$$

then the 180 degrees rotation of this equality (which follows from similar manipulations), then the equalities

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 4} \end{array} \stackrel{(8.24)}{=} \pm \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 5} \end{array} \stackrel{(8.21)}{=} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 6} \end{array} \\
 \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 7} \end{array} \stackrel{(8.25)}{=} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 8} \end{array} \stackrel{(8.23)+(8.5)}{=} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 9} \end{array}$$

and the 180 degrees rotation of this relation (which again follows from similar manipulations).

Finally we consider the last diagram in Figure 1 (without the sign, and not considered “up to isotopy” anymore), and denote it Z' . To prove (8.20), it suffices to prove the similar relation where “ Z ” is replaced by “ Z' ”. In this setting, if we draw the right-hand side, we can first use the zigzag relations on the black strands (corresponding to i), then on the green strands (corresponding to k), and finally on the red strands (corresponding to j) to obtain the left-hand side. In this process we use the sign relations from Lemma 8.3. In the first step, the corresponding crossings involve colors which are either equal or distant, so no sign appears. In the second step we use the relations

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 10} \end{array} = t_{jk}^{-1} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 11} \end{array}, \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 12} \end{array} = t_{kj} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 13} \end{array}.$$

And in the third step we use the relations

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 14} \end{array} = t_{ji} t_{kj}^{-1} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 15} \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 16} \end{array} = t_{jk} t_{ij}^{-1} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 17} \end{array}, \\
 \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 18} \end{array} = t_{ji}^{-1} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 19} \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 20} \end{array} = t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 21} \end{array}.$$

Hence all the signs cancel, and we obtain the desired relation. \square

Part 3. Relation to parity sheaves

Overview. This part is devoted to the proof of the relation between the diagrammatic Hecke category and parity complexes on flag varieties. Many proofs in this section are similar to some proofs in Part 1. However we repeat most of the details, for the benefit of readers interested in geometry of flag varieties but not necessarily in representation theory of reductive groups.

In Section 9 we recall some notions related to (partial) flag varieties of a Kac–Moody group \mathcal{G} and to parity complexes on these varieties. In particular we introduce and study the concept of “section of the $!$ -flag”, which is an analogue for parity complexes of the “sections of the ∇ -flag” of tilting modules in Part 1. Using this notion we prove Proposition 9.11, which explains how to “generate” morphisms between “Bott–Samelson type” parity complexes and is the analogue for parity complexes of Proposition 3.10.

In Section 10 we prove the main result of this part, namely an equivalence between the Hecke category attached to \mathcal{G} and the category of Borel-equivariant parity complexes on the full flag variety of \mathcal{G} . (This equivalence is a generalization of Soergel’s description of the category of equivariant semisimple complexes with complex coefficients on a flag variety in terms of Soergel bimodules.)

Finally, in Section 11 we consider the special case of affine Kac–Moody groups, and describe the categories \mathcal{D} and $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ of Part 1 in terms of parity complexes on affine flag varieties.

9. PARITY COMPLEXES ON FLAG VARIETIES

9.1. Kac–Moody groups. Let A be a generalized Cartan matrix, let $(\mathfrak{t}, \pi, \pi^\vee)$ be a realization of A , and let \mathfrak{g}_A be the associated Kac–Moody Lie algebra, as defined e.g. in [Ku, §1.1]. Let also $\mathfrak{h} \subset \mathfrak{g}_A$ be the natural Cartan subalgebra, let W be the Weyl group (see [Ku, §1.3]), let $S \subset W$ be the subset of simple reflections, and let ℓ be the corresponding length function. We also denote by \leq the Bruhat order on W . We will use the same terminology and notation as in Part 1 for the objects attached to the Coxeter group (W, S) ; see in particular §3.5 for the notion of an expression.

From now on we fix an integral Cartan subalgebra $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}} \subset \mathfrak{h}$ of \mathfrak{g} in the sense of [Ku, §6.1.6]; then from this datum one can define the Kac–Moody group \mathcal{G} (over the complex numbers) as in [Ku, §6.1.16] and its Borel subgroup $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{G}$. We let

$$\mathcal{X} := \mathcal{G}/\mathcal{B}$$

be the corresponding flag variety, with its natural structure of ind-variety; see [Ku, §7.1]. For any $w \in W$ we set $\mathcal{X}_w := \mathcal{B}w\mathcal{B}/\mathcal{B}$; then we have the Bruhat decomposition

$$\mathcal{X} = \bigsqcup_{w \in W} \mathcal{X}_w,$$

see [Ku, Corollary 6.1.20]. Moreover, each \mathcal{X}_w is a locally-closed subvariety of \mathcal{X} . We denote by $i_w: \mathcal{X}_w \rightarrow \mathcal{X}$ the corresponding inclusion morphism. For any $w \in W$, we will consider the open ind-subvariety

$$\mathcal{X}_{\geq w} = \bigsqcup_{y \geq w} \mathcal{X}_y.$$

Note that \mathcal{X}_w is closed in $\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}$.

For any simple reflection $s \in S$, we also consider the corresponding minimal parabolic subgroup $\mathcal{P}_s \subset \mathcal{G}$, and the corresponding partial flag variety

$$\mathcal{X}^s := \mathcal{G}/\mathcal{P}_s.$$

We also have the Schubert cells $\mathcal{X}_w^s := \mathcal{B}w\mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{P}_s$ for any $w \in W$; we will denote by $i_w^s: \mathcal{X}_w^s \rightarrow \mathcal{X}^s$ the inclusion morphism. (Of course, \mathcal{X}_w^s only depends on the image of w in W/W_s , where $W_s = \{1, s\}$.) We denote by $W^s \subset W$ the subset consisting of the elements w such that $w < ws$, so that the natural map $W^s \rightarrow W/W_s$ is a bijection; below, when convenient we will use this map to identify these two sets. For $w \in W^s$, we also set

$$\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s := \bigsqcup_{\substack{y \in W^s \\ y \geq w}} \mathcal{X}_y^s.$$

Here again, $\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s$ is open in \mathcal{X}^s , and \mathcal{X}_w^s is closed in $\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s$.

We will denote by $q^s: \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}^s$ the natural morphism. For any $w \in W$, we have

$$(q^s)^{-1}(\mathcal{X}_w^s) = \mathcal{X}_w \sqcup \mathcal{X}_{ws}.$$

9.2. Derived categories of sheaves on \mathcal{X} and \mathcal{X}^s . Let \mathbb{K} be a Noetherian commutative ring of finite global dimension. Then we can consider the \mathcal{B} -equivariant derived category

$$D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$$

of \mathbb{K} -sheaves on \mathcal{X} , and the derived category

$$D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$$

of \mathbb{K} -sheaves on \mathcal{X} which are constructible with respect to the Bruhat decomposition. (The technical details of the definition of such categories are discussed in [Na, §2.2], and will not be repeated here. Let us only note that, by definition, any object of $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ or $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ is supported on a *finite* union of Bruhat cells.) There exists a natural forgetful functor $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, which will usually be omitted from the notation. For \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G} in $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ or in $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, we set

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) &= \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}[n]), \\ \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) &= \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}[n]) \end{aligned}$$

respectively.

We will also consider the triangulated categories

$$D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K}) \quad \text{and} \quad D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$$

defined in a similar way, replacing \mathcal{X} by \mathcal{X}^s . We define $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G})$ and $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G})$ in the obvious way.

The morphism q^s induces functors

$$(q^s)_*, (q^s)! : D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K}), \quad (q^s)^*, (q^s)^! : D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$$

and similarly functors

$$\begin{aligned} (q^s)_*, (q^s)! : D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}) &\rightarrow D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K}), \\ (q^s)^*, (q^s)^! : D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K}) &\rightarrow D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}). \end{aligned}$$

In both settings there exist canonical isomorphisms of functors

$$(9.1) \quad (q^s)! \cong (q^s)_*, \quad (q^s)! \cong (q^s)^*[2].$$

For $w \in W$, we set

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_w &:= (i_w)_* \mathbb{K}_{\mathcal{X}_w}[\ell(w)] \in D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}), \\ \nabla_w^s &:= (i_w^s)_* \mathbb{K}_{\mathcal{X}_w^s}[\dim(\mathcal{X}_w^s)] \in D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K}), \\ \Delta_w &:= (i_w)! \mathbb{K}_{\mathcal{X}_w}[\ell(w)] \in D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}), \\ \Delta_w^s &:= (i_w^s)! \mathbb{K}_{\mathcal{X}_w^s}[\dim(\mathcal{X}_w^s)] \in D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K}). \end{aligned}$$

We will denote by the same symbols the images of these objects in $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ and $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$ respectively.

The category $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ can be endowed with a natural convolution product

$$(-) \star^{\mathcal{B}} (-): D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}) \times D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$$

defined as follows. Let $q: \mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}$ be the projection, and $m: \mathcal{G} \times^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}$ be the morphism induced by the \mathcal{G} -action on \mathcal{X} . Then, given \mathcal{E} and \mathcal{F} in $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, there exists a unique object $\mathcal{E} \tilde{\boxtimes} \mathcal{F}$ in $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{G} \times^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ whose pullback to $\mathcal{G} \times \mathcal{X}$ is isomorphic to $q^* \mathcal{E} \boxtimes \mathcal{F}$; then

$$\mathcal{E} \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{F} = m_*(\mathcal{E} \tilde{\boxtimes} \mathcal{F}).$$

This convolution product (together with the natural associativity constraint and the natural identity object) makes $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ into a monoidal category.

The same construction also defines a bifunctor

$$(-) \star^{\mathcal{B}} (-): D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}) \times D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}),$$

which we will denote similarly.

Remark 9.1. As above, we ignore the subtleties related to the fact that \mathcal{G} is not an ind-variety.

9.3. Parity complexes on flag varieties. As in §9.2, we let \mathbb{K} be a Noetherian commutative ring of finite global dimension. Recall from [JMW] the notion of *parity complexes* in $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$ or $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$. (In [JMW], only certain rings of coefficients are considered; but the definition has an obvious analogue in this more general setting; see [MR, §2.1].) We will denote by $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, $\text{Parity}_{(\mathcal{B})}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$, $\text{Parity}_{(\mathcal{B})}(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$ the corresponding full subcategories of parity complexes. Then by definition the forgetful functors send $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ into $\text{Parity}_{(\mathcal{B})}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ and $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$ into $\text{Parity}_{(\mathcal{B})}(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$.

Recall also that the convolution product $\star^{\mathcal{B}}$ on $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ preserves the subcategory $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, see [JMW, Theorem 4.8]. For any $s \in S$ we set

$$\mathcal{E}_s := \mathbb{K}_{\mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B}}[1]$$

(where we omit the direct image functor under the embedding $\mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{X}$). Then, for any expression $\underline{w} = s_1 \cdots s_r$, we set

$$\mathcal{E}_{\underline{w}} := \mathcal{E}_{s_1} \star^{\mathcal{B}} \cdots \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}_{s_r}.$$

Since convolution preserves parity complexes, this object belongs to $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$. We will also denote by the same symbol the image of this object in $\text{Parity}_{(\mathcal{B})}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$.

There exists a canonical graded algebra isomorphism

$$(9.2) \quad H_{\mathcal{B}}^{\bullet}(\text{pt}; \mathbb{K}) \cong \text{Sym}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}^* \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{K}) = \mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{K}),$$

where $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}^* := \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}, \mathbb{Z})$ and $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}^* \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{K}$ is placed in degree 2. Moreover, if $\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G} \in D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ are parity complexes, the $H_{\mathcal{B}}^{\bullet}(\text{pt}; \mathbb{K})$ -module $\text{Hom}_{D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G})$ is free of finite rank, and the forgetful functor induces an isomorphism

$$(9.3) \quad \mathbb{K} \otimes_{H_{\mathcal{B}}^{\bullet}(\text{pt}; \mathbb{K})} \text{Hom}_{D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}),$$

see [MR, Lemma 2.2].

Assume from now on that \mathbb{K} is a (commutative) complete local ring. By [JMW, Theorem 2.12 & §4.1], for any $w \in W$ we have a parity sheaf (i.e. an indecomposable parity complex)

$$\mathcal{E}_w \in \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$$

which is characterized (among indecomposable parity complexes) by the properties that \mathcal{E}_w is supported on $\overline{\mathcal{X}_w}$ and that

$$i_w^*(\mathcal{E}_w) \cong \mathbb{K}_{\mathcal{X}_w}[\ell(w)].$$

By [MR, Lemma 2.4], the image of \mathcal{E}_w in $\text{Parity}_{(\mathcal{B})}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ is still indecomposable, hence it is isomorphic to the parity sheaf in $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ characterized by the similar conditions (which will therefore also be denoted \mathcal{E}_w). In particular, if $s \in S$, then \mathcal{E}_s is the object considered above. (In particular this object is canonical, whereas in general \mathcal{E}_w is defined only up to isomorphism.)

Similarly, for any $w \in W^s$ there exists a unique parity sheaf

$$\mathcal{E}_w^s \in \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$$

which is characterized by the properties that \mathcal{E}_w^s is supported on $\overline{\mathcal{X}_w^s}$ and that

$$(i_w^s)^*(\mathcal{E}_w^s) \cong \mathbb{K}_{\mathcal{X}_w^s}[\ell(w)].$$

As above the image of \mathcal{E}_w^s in $\text{Parity}_{(\mathcal{B})}(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$ is indecomposable, and will still be denoted \mathcal{E}_w^s .

It is well known that we have an isomorphism

$$(9.4) \quad \mathcal{E}_{ws} \cong (q^s)^* \mathcal{E}_w^s[1]$$

for any $w \in W^s$; we fix a choice of isomorphism for each w . It is also known that for any $w \in W^s$, \mathcal{E}_w^s is a direct summand of $(q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_w$; we fix split embeddings and projections

$$(9.5) \quad \mathcal{E}_w^s \rightarrow (q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_w \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_w^s.$$

9.4. Sections of the !-flag. In the rest of this section we fix a field \mathbb{F} , and consider the constructions above only in the case $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{F}$. Recall that an object $\mathcal{F} \in D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})$ is called *!-even* if we have

$$\mathcal{H}^k(i_w^! \mathcal{F}) = 0 \quad \text{unless } k \text{ is even.}$$

\mathcal{F} is called *!-odd* if $\mathcal{F}[1]$ is !-even. Finally, we will say that \mathcal{F} is *!-parity* if it is the direct sum of a !-even and a !-odd object. (Note that this terminology is slightly different from the one used in [JMW].)

Definition 9.2. Let $\mathcal{F} \in D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})$ be !-parity. A *section of the !-flag* of \mathcal{F} is a quadruple $(\Pi, e, d, (\varphi_{\pi}^{\mathcal{F}})_{\pi \in \Pi})$ where

- Π is a finite set;
- $e: \Pi \rightarrow W$ and $d: \Pi \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ are maps;
- for each $\pi \in \Pi$, $\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}}$ is an element in $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{A})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})}(\mathcal{E}_{e(\pi)}, \mathcal{F}[d(\pi)])$

such that for any $w \in W$ the images of the morphisms in

$$\{\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}}: \mathcal{E}_w \rightarrow \mathcal{F}[d(\pi)] : \pi \in e^{-1}(w)\}$$

form a basis of $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{A})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}, \mathbb{F})}(\mathcal{E}_w, \mathcal{F})$ (where we omit the functor of restriction from \mathcal{X} to $\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}$ from the notation).

Remark 9.3. (1) We have an isomorphism

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{A})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}, \mathbb{F})}(\mathcal{E}_w, \mathcal{F}) \cong \mathrm{H}^{\bullet-\ell(w)}(\mathcal{X}_w, i_w^! \mathcal{F}).$$

In particular, $|e^{-1}(w)| = \dim_{\mathbb{F}} \mathrm{H}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{X}_w, i_w^! \mathcal{F})$ for any section of the $!$ -flag.

- (2) It follows from arguments similar to those in the proof of [JMW, Corollary 2.9] that sections of the $!$ -flag always exist for $!$ -parity objects.

Of course, we have similar concepts for varieties \mathcal{X}^s instead of \mathcal{X} (replacing the objects \mathcal{E}_w by the objects \mathcal{E}_w^s), where now e takes values in W/W_s (or equivalently in W^s); we will not repeat the definition.

9.5. Sections of the $!$ -flag and pushforward to \mathcal{X}^s . We fix a simple reflection $s \in S$. Let $\mathcal{F} \in D_{(\mathcal{A})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})$ be $!$ -parity, and let $(\Pi, e, d, (\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}})_{\pi \in \Pi})$ be a section of the $!$ -flag of \mathcal{F} . It is easily checked (using the base change theorem) that the object $\mathcal{G} := (q^s)_* \mathcal{F}$ is $!$ -parity, and the goal of this subsection is to explain how one can define a section of the $!$ -flag for this object out of $(\Pi, e, d, (\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}})_{\pi \in \Pi})$.

We set $\Pi' := \Pi$, and define $e': \Pi' \rightarrow W/W_s$ as the composition of e with the surjection $W \rightarrow W/W_s$. Now let $\pi \in \Pi'$. First, we assume that $e(\pi) > e(\pi)s$. Then we set $d'(\pi) := d(\pi) - 1$, and we define $\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{G}}$ as the composition

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}_{e'(\pi)}^s &\xrightarrow{\mathrm{adj}} (q^s)_* (q^s)^* \mathcal{E}_{e(\pi)}^s \cong (q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_{e(\pi)}[-1] \\ &\xrightarrow{(q^s)_*(\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}})[-1]} (q^s)_* \mathcal{F}[d(\pi) - 1] = \mathcal{G}[d'(\pi)], \end{aligned}$$

where the isomorphism is induced by (9.4). In other words, $\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{G}}$ is the image of $\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}}$ under the isomorphism

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{A})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})}(\mathcal{E}_{e(\pi)}, \mathcal{F}[d(\pi)]) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{A})}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{F})}(\mathcal{E}_{e'(\pi)}^s, \mathcal{G}[d'(\pi)])$$

induced by (9.4) and adjunction.

Now, assume that $e(\pi) < e(\pi)s$, or in other words that $e(\pi) \in W^s$. Then we set $d'(\pi) := d(\pi)$, and we define $\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{G}}$ as the composition

$$\mathcal{E}_{e'(\pi)}^s \rightarrow (q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_{e(\pi)} \xrightarrow{(q^s)_*(\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}})} (q^s)_* \mathcal{F}[d(\pi)] = \mathcal{G}[d'(\pi)],$$

where the first map is the first morphism in (9.5).

Remark 9.4. An important point for us is that in both cases the morphism $\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{G}}$ factors through a shift of $(q^s)_*(\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}}): (q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_{e(\pi)} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}[d(\pi)]$.

Proposition 9.5. *The quadruple $(\Pi', e', d', (\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{G}})_{\pi \in \Pi'})$ constructed above is a section of the $!$ -flag of $\mathcal{G} = (q^s)_* \mathcal{F}$.*

Before proving Proposition 9.5 in general we consider a special case.

Lemma 9.6. *Let $w \in W$, and assume that \mathcal{F} is isomorphic to a direct sum of shifts of ∇_w . Then the quadruple $(\Pi', e', d', (\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{G}})_{\pi \in \Pi'})$ constructed above is a section of the $!$ -flag of \mathcal{G} .*

Proof. Let us fix a non-zero morphism $f_w: \mathcal{E}_w \rightarrow \nabla_w$ (which is unique up to scalar); then the morphism

$$\bigoplus_{\pi \in \Pi} \varphi_\pi[-d(\pi)]: \bigoplus_{\pi \in \Pi} \mathcal{E}_w[-d(\pi)] \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$$

factors through $\bigoplus_{\pi \in \Pi} f_w[-d(\pi)]$, and induces an isomorphism

$$\bigoplus_{\pi \in \Pi} \nabla_w[-d(\pi)] \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{F};$$

therefore we can assume that $\mathcal{F} = \nabla_w$, $\Pi = \{w\}$, $e(w) = w$, $d(w) = 0$ and $\varphi_w^{\mathcal{F}} = f_w$. In this setting \mathcal{G} is isomorphic to ∇_w^s or $\nabla_w^s[1]$, so that to conclude it suffices to prove that $\varphi_w^{\mathcal{G}} \neq 0$.

If $w > ws$, then the fact that $\varphi_w^{\mathcal{G}} \neq 0$ follows from the facts that $\varphi_w^{\mathcal{F}} \neq 0$ and that $\varphi_w^{\mathcal{G}}$ is obtained from $\varphi_w^{\mathcal{F}}$ by adjunction. If $w < ws$, it is easy to see that $(i_w^s)^*(\varphi_w^{\mathcal{G}})$ is an isomorphism, hence is non-zero; it follows that $\varphi_w^{\mathcal{G}} \neq 0$ also in this case. \square

Proof of Proposition 9.5. We have to prove that for any $w \in W^s$ the images of the morphisms $\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{G}}$ with $e'(\pi) = w$ form a basis of $\text{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s, \mathbb{F})}(\mathcal{E}_w^s, \mathcal{G})$. For this we fix w and choose some closed subvariety $\mathcal{Y} \subset \mathcal{X}$ such that

$$\mathcal{Y} \supset \mathcal{X}_w, \quad \mathcal{Y} \not\supset \mathcal{X}_{ws},$$

and such that both

$$\mathcal{Y}' := \mathcal{Y} \setminus \mathcal{X}_w \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{Y}'' := \mathcal{Y} \cup \mathcal{X}_{ws}$$

are closed subvarieties. We denote by

$$i: \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}, \quad i': \mathcal{Y}' \rightarrow \mathcal{X}, \quad i'': \mathcal{Y}'' \rightarrow \mathcal{X}$$

the embeddings, so that we have natural morphisms

$$(i')_!(i')^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow i_!i^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow (i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$$

induced by adjunction. Note that all of these objects are $!$ -parity.

One can easily check, using the standard triangle

$$i_!i^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \rightarrow j_*j^*\mathcal{F} \xrightarrow{[1]}$$

where $j: \mathcal{X} \setminus \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}$ is the (open) embedding, resp. the similar triangle for i'' , that every morphism $\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}}$ where $e(\pi) = w$, resp. $e(\pi) = ws$, factors (uniquely) through a morphism

$$\varphi_\pi^{i_!i^!\mathcal{F}}: \mathcal{E}_w \rightarrow i_!i^!\mathcal{F}[d(\pi)], \quad \text{resp.} \quad \varphi_\pi^{(i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}}: \mathcal{E}_{ws} \rightarrow (i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}[d(\pi)].$$

Then by construction the corresponding morphism $\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{G}}$ factors through a morphism

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_\pi^{(q^s)_*i_!i^!\mathcal{F}}: \mathcal{E}_w^s \rightarrow (q^s)_*i_!i^!\mathcal{F}[d'(\pi)], \\ \text{resp.} \quad \varphi_\pi^{(q^s)_*(i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}}: \mathcal{E}_w^s \rightarrow (q^s)_*(i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}[d'(\pi)]. \end{aligned}$$

It is clear also that the morphisms obtained in this way coincide with the morphisms obtained by the above procedure from the section of the $!$ -flag of $i_!i^!\mathcal{F}$, resp. $(i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}$, obtained (in the obvious way) from $(\Pi, e, d, (\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}})_{\pi \in \Pi})$ by restriction to \mathcal{Y} , resp. to \mathcal{Y}'' .

Now if $e(\pi) = w$, resp. $e(\pi) = ws$, we can consider the composition

$$\varphi_{\pi}^{(i_w)*}(i_w)^!\mathcal{F} : \mathcal{E}_w \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^{i_!i^!\mathcal{F}}} i_!i^!\mathcal{F}[d(\pi)] \rightarrow (i_w)_*(i_w)^!\mathcal{F}[d(\pi)]$$

where the second morphism is induced by the adjunction $((i_w)^*, (i_w)_*)$, resp. the composition

$$\varphi_{\pi}^{(i_{ws})*(i_{ws})^!\mathcal{F}} : \mathcal{E}_{ws} \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^{(i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}}} (i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}[d(\pi)] \rightarrow (i_{ws})_*(i_{ws})^!\mathcal{F}[d(\pi)]$$

where the second morphism is induced by the adjunction $((i_{ws})^*, (i_{ws})_*)$, and the corresponding morphisms $\varphi_{\pi}^{(q^s)*(i_w)*(i_w)^!\mathcal{F}}$, resp. $\varphi_{\pi}^{(q^s)*(i_{ws})*(i_{ws})^!\mathcal{F}}$, obtained by the procedure above, which can also be described as the compositions

$$\mathcal{E}_w \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^{(q^s)*i_!i^!\mathcal{F}}} (q^s)_*i_!i^!\mathcal{F}[d'(\pi)] \rightarrow (q^s)_*(i_w)_*(i_w)^!\mathcal{F}[d'(\pi)],$$

resp.

$$\mathcal{E}_w^s \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^{(q^s)*(i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}}} (q^s)_*(i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}[d'(\pi)] \rightarrow (q^s)_*(i_{ws})_*(i_{ws})^!\mathcal{F}[d'(\pi)].$$

Finally, let us denote by $i'_w : \mathcal{X}_w \sqcup \mathcal{X}_{ws} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}$ the inclusion. Then if $e(\pi) = w$, resp. $e(\pi) = ws$, we can consider the composition

$$\varphi_{\pi}^{(i'_w)*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F}} : \mathcal{E}_w \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^{(i_w)*(i_w)^!\mathcal{F}}} (i_w)_*(i_w)^!\mathcal{F}[d(\pi)] \rightarrow (i'_w)_*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F}[d(\pi)],$$

resp. the composition

$$\varphi_{\pi}^{(i'_w)*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F}} : \mathcal{E}_{ws} \xrightarrow{\varphi_{\pi}^{(i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}}} (i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}[d(\pi)] \rightarrow (i'_w)_*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F}[d(\pi)],$$

where in both cases the second morphism is again induced by adjunction, and the corresponding morphisms

$$\varphi_{\pi}^{(q^s)*(i'_w)*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F}} : \mathcal{E}_w^s \rightarrow (q^s)_*(i'_w)_*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F}[d'(\pi)].$$

Now, consider the natural distinguished triangle

$$(i_w)_*(i_w)^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow (i'_w)_*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow (i_{ws})_*(i_{ws})^!\mathcal{F} \xrightarrow{[1]}$$

and its image

$$(q^s)_*(i_w)_*(i_w)^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow (q^s)_*(i'_w)_*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow (q^s)_*(i_{ws})_*(i_{ws})^!\mathcal{F} \xrightarrow{[1]}$$

under the functor $(q^s)_*$. Since the image under $(q^s)_*$ of any morphism $\nabla_{ws} \rightarrow \nabla_w[k]$ is zero, this triangle is split; moreover each term is a direct sum of shifts of ∇_w^s . Therefore, taking the image under the functor $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s)}(\mathcal{E}_w^s, -)$ we obtain an exact sequence of \mathbb{F} -vector spaces

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s, \mathbb{F})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{E}_w^s, (q^s)_*(i_w)_*(i_w)^!\mathcal{F}) \\ &\rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s, \mathbb{F})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{E}_w^s, (q^s)_*(i'_w)_*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F}) \\ &\rightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s, \mathbb{F})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{E}_w^s, (q^s)_*(i_{ws})_*(i_{ws})^!\mathcal{F}) \rightarrow 0. \end{aligned}$$

It follows from Lemma 9.6 that the images of the morphisms $\varphi_{\pi}^{(q^s)*(i_w)*(i_w)^!\mathcal{F}}$, resp. $\varphi_{\pi}^{(q^s)*(i_{ws})*(i_{ws})^!\mathcal{F}}$, with $e(\pi) = w$, resp. $e(\pi) = ws$, form a basis of the first, respectively third, term in this exact sequence. Hence the morphisms $\varphi_{\pi}^{(q^s)*(i'_w)*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F}}$

with $e(\pi) \in \{w, ws\}$ form a basis of the middle term. Now we remark that the natural morphisms

$$(i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \quad \text{and} \quad (i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow (i'_w)_*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F}$$

induce isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_w^s, (q^s)_*\mathcal{F}) &\xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_w^s, (q^s)_*(i'')_!(i'')^!\mathcal{F}) \\ &\xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}^s, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_w^s, (q^s)_*(i'_w)_*(i'_w)^!\mathcal{F}), \end{aligned}$$

and we deduce the desired claim. \square

9.6. Sections of the !-flag and pullback from \mathcal{X}^s . As in §9.5 we fix a simple reflection $s \in S$. Let $\mathcal{F} \in D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{F})$ be an object which is !-parity, and let $(\Pi, e, d, (\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}})_{\pi \in \Pi})$ be a section of the !-flag of \mathcal{F} . It is easily checked that the object $\mathcal{H} := (q^s)^*\mathcal{F}$ is !-parity, and the goal of this subsection is to explain how one can define a section of the !-flag for this object out of $(\Pi, e, d, (\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}})_{\pi \in \Pi})$.

We set $\Pi' := \Pi \times \{0, 1\}$. We define a map $e': \Pi' \rightarrow W$ as follows. Given $\pi \in \Pi$, the elements $e'(\pi, 0)$ and $e'(\pi, 1)$ are characterized by the following properties:

- the images in W/W_s of both $e'(\pi, 0)$ and $e'(\pi, 1)$ are equal to $e(\pi)$;
- $e'(\pi, 1) = e'(\pi, 0)s$;
- $e'(\pi, 0) < e'(\pi, 1)$ in the Bruhat order.

Then we define a map $d': \Pi' \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ and morphisms $\varphi_{(\pi, 0)}^{\mathcal{H}}$ and $\varphi_{(\pi, 1)}^{\mathcal{H}}$ for $\pi \in \Pi$ as follows. First, we set $d'(\pi, 1) = d(\pi) + 1$, and $\varphi_{(\pi, 1)}^{\mathcal{H}}$ is defined as the composition

$$\mathcal{E}_{e'(\pi, 1)} \cong (q^s)^*\mathcal{E}_{e(\pi)}^s[1] \xrightarrow{(q^s)^*(\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}})[1]} (q^s)^*\mathcal{F}[d(\pi) + 1] = \mathcal{H}[d'(\pi, 1)],$$

where the first isomorphism is (9.4). On the other hand, we set $d'(\pi, 0) = d(\pi) + 2$ and we define $\varphi_{(\pi, 0)}^{\mathcal{H}}$ as the composition

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}_{e'(\pi, 0)} &\xrightarrow{\mathrm{adj}} (q^s)^!(q^s)_!\mathcal{E}_{e'(\pi, 0)} \xrightarrow{\sim} (q^s)^*(q^s)_*\mathcal{E}_{e'(\pi, 0)}[2] \rightarrow \\ &\quad (q^s)^*\mathcal{E}_{e(\pi)}^s[2] \xrightarrow{(q^s)^*(\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}})[2]} (q^s)^*\mathcal{F}[d(\pi) + 2] = \mathcal{H}[d'(\pi, 0)]. \end{aligned}$$

Here the second morphism is induced by isomorphisms (9.1), and the third one by the second morphism in (9.5).

Remark 9.7. As in Remark 9.4, an important point for us is that both $\varphi_{(\pi, 0)}^{\mathcal{H}}$ and $\varphi_{(\pi, 1)}^{\mathcal{H}}$ factor through a shift of the morphism $(q^s)^*(\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{F}}): (q^s)^*\mathcal{E}_{e(\pi)} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}[d(\pi)]$.

Proposition 9.8. *The quadruple $(\Pi', e', d', (\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{H}})_{\pi \in \Pi'})$ constructed above is a section of the !-flag of $\mathcal{H} = (q^s)^*\mathcal{F}$.*

Before proving Proposition 9.8 in general we consider a special case.

Lemma 9.9. *Let $w \in W^s$, and assume that \mathcal{F} is isomorphic to a direct sum of shifts of ∇_w^s . Then the quadruple $(\Pi', e', d', (\varphi_\pi^{\mathcal{H}})_{\pi \in \Pi'})$ constructed above is a section of the !-flag of \mathcal{H} .*

Proof. As in the proof of Lemma 9.6, we can assume that $\mathcal{F} = \nabla_w^s$, $\Pi = \{w\}$, $e(w) = w$, $d(w) = 0$. In this case, adjunction provides a canonical distinguished triangle

$$\nabla_w[-2] \rightarrow \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \nabla_{ws}[-1] \xrightarrow{[1]}.$$

Moreover, the morphisms in this triangle induce isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_w, \mathcal{H}) &\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}, \mathbb{F})}^{\bullet-2}(\mathcal{E}_w, \nabla_w), \\ \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq ws}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{ws}, \mathcal{H}) &\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq ws}, \mathbb{F})}^{\bullet-1}(\mathcal{E}_{ws}, \nabla_{ws}), \end{aligned}$$

and all of these spaces are 1-dimensional. Hence to conclude it suffices to prove that the restriction of $\varphi_{e'(\pi,0)}^{\mathcal{H}}$ to \mathcal{X}_w and the restriction of $\varphi_{e'(\pi,1)}^{\mathcal{H}}$ to \mathcal{X}_{ws} are non-zero; in both cases this is clear from construction. \square

Proof of Proposition 9.8. The proof is very similar to, and in fact simpler than, that of Proposition 9.5; details are therefore left to the reader. \square

9.7. Morphisms between “Bott–Samelson type” parity complexes. We set

$$\Upsilon_s := (q^s)^*(q^s)_*[1]: D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F}).$$

The following lemma is very standard. Its proof, based on the base change theorem, is left to the reader.

Lemma 9.10. *For any $s \in S$, there exists a canonical isomorphism of functors*

$$\Upsilon_s \cong (-) \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}_s.$$

Recall the parity complexes $\mathcal{E}_{\underline{w}}$ (where \underline{w} is an expression) defined in §9.3.

Proposition 9.11. *Let \underline{x} and \underline{v} be expressions, and assume that \underline{x} is a reduced expression for some element $x \in W$.*

- (1) *Assume that $x \in W^s$, so that $\underline{x}s$ is a reduced expression for $xs \in W$. Let $(f_i)_{i \in I}$ be a family of homogeneous elements in $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}}, \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}})$ whose images span the vector space $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq x}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}}, \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}})$, and let $(g_j)_{j \in J}$ be a family of homogeneous elements in $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s}, \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}})$ whose images span the vector space $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq xs}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s}, \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}})$. Then there exist integers n_i and morphisms $f'_i: \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s}[n_i]$ (for $i \in I$) and integers m_j and morphisms $g'_j: \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s}[m_j]$ (for $j \in J$) such that the images of the compositions*

$$\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \xrightarrow{f'_i} \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s}[n_i] \xrightarrow{f_i \star \mathcal{E}_s[n_i]} \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}s}[n_i + \deg(f_i)]$$

together with the images of the compositions

$$\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \xrightarrow{g'_j} \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s}[m_j] \xrightarrow{g_j \star \mathcal{E}_s[m_j]} \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}s}[m_j + \deg(g_j)]$$

span the vector space $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq x}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}}, \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}s})$.

- (2) *Assume that $\underline{x} = \underline{y}s$ for some expression \underline{y} (which is automatically a reduced expression for xs). Let $(f_i)_{i \in I}$ be a family of homogeneous elements in $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}}, \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}})$ whose images span $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq x}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}}, \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}})$, and let $(g_j)_{j \in J}$ be a family of homogeneous elements in $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\underline{y}}, \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}})$ whose images span $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq xs}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\underline{y}}, \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}})$. Then there exist integers n_i and morphisms $f'_i: \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s}[n_i]$ (for $i \in I$) and integers m_j and morphisms $g'_j: \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s}[m_j]$ (for $j \in J$) such that the images of the compositions*

$$\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \xrightarrow{f'_i} \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s}[n_i] \xrightarrow{f_i \star \mathcal{E}_s[n_i]} \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}s}[n_i + \deg(f_i)]$$

together with the images of the compositions

$$\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \xrightarrow{g'_j} \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}}[m_j] \xrightarrow{g_j \star \mathcal{E}_s[m_j]} \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}s}[m_j + \deg(g_j)]$$

span the vector space $\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq x}, \mathbb{F})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}}, \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}s})$.

Proof. (1) We have $\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \cong \mathcal{E}_x$ in $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq x}, \mathbb{F})$, and $\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s} \cong \mathcal{E}_{xs}$ in $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq xs}, \mathbb{F})$. Hence we can fix split embeddings $\mathcal{E}_x \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}}$ and $\mathcal{E}_{xs} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s}$, and assume that the compositions

$$\mathcal{E}_x \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \xrightarrow{f_i} \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}}[\deg(f_i)] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{E}_{xs} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s} \xrightarrow{g_j} \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}}[\deg(g_j)]$$

are part of a section of the !-flag of $\mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}}$. Then Proposition 9.5 provides a section of the !-flag of $(q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}}$ whose morphisms in $\mathrm{Hom}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_x^s, (q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}})$ are parametrized by $I \sqcup J$, in such a way that the morphism associated with $i \in I$ factors through a shift of $(q^s)_*(f_i): (q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow (q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}}[\deg(f_i)]$, and the morphism associated with $j \in J$ factors through a shift of $(q^s)_*(g_j): (q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s} \rightarrow (q^s)_* \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}}[\deg(g_j)]$ (see in particular Remark 9.4). Applying Proposition 9.8, we then obtain a section of the !-flag of $\Upsilon_s \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}}$ whose morphisms in $\mathrm{Hom}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_x, \Upsilon_s \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}})$ are parametrized by $I \sqcup J$, in such a way that the morphism associated with $i \in I$ factors through a shift of $\Upsilon_s(f_i): \Upsilon_s \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow \Upsilon_s \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}}[\deg(f_i)]$, and the morphism associated with $j \in J$ factors through a shift of $\Upsilon_s(g_j): \Upsilon_s \mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}s} \rightarrow \Upsilon_s \mathcal{E}_{\underline{v}}[\deg(g_j)]$ (see in particular Remark 9.7). Composing with an arbitrarily chosen split projection $\mathcal{E}_{\underline{x}} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_x$ and using Lemma 9.10, we deduce the desired claim.

(2) The proof is identical to the proof of (1), and is therefore omitted. \square

10. PARITY COMPLEXES AND THE HECKE CATEGORY

10.1. Diagrammatic category associated with \mathcal{G} . We now define a realization of (W, S) over \mathbb{Z} (in the sense of [EW2, Definition 3.1]) as follows:

- the underlying \mathbb{Z} -module is $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}$;
- for any $s \in S$, the elements “ α_s ” and “ α_s^\vee ” are the simple root and coroot attached to s respectively.

This realization is balanced in the sense of [EW2, Definition 3.6].

For any (commutative) ring \mathbb{K} one can consider the realization $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}} := \mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{K}$ over \mathbb{K} . If the “Demazure surjectivity” condition [EW2, Assumption 3.7] holds for $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}$, we set $\mathbb{Z}' := \mathbb{Z}$; otherwise we set $\mathbb{Z}' := \mathbb{Z}[\frac{1}{2}]$. Then Demazure surjectivity holds for $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}'}$, hence for $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}}$ for any ring \mathbb{K} such that there exists a ring morphism $\mathbb{Z}' \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$. For such a ring, we denote by $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$ the diagrammatic category of [EW2, Definition 5.2] associated with this realization. (The definition of this category is similar to the definition of the category $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}$ in §4.2. In particular, the morphisms are generated by the same diagrams as in §4.2, with now S and W defined as in §9.1.)

By construction, for \mathbb{K} as above and any M, N in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$, the morphism space

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})}^\bullet(M, N) := \bigoplus_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})}(M, N\langle i \rangle)$$

is a graded bimodule over

$$(10.1) \quad \mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}}) = \mathrm{Sym}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}}^*).$$

(Here, $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}}^* := \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}}, \mathbb{K})$.) Note also that if $\mathbb{K} \rightarrow \mathbb{K}'$ is a ring morphism (where again \mathbb{K}' is commutative), then there exists a natural functor $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G}) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}'}(\mathcal{G})$ which is the identity on objects. Moreover, this functor induces an isomorphism

$$(10.2) \quad \mathbb{K}' \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})}(M, N) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}'}(\mathcal{G})}(M, N)$$

for any M, N in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$. (In fact, this follows from the existence of the “double leaves basis” of [EW2, Theorem 6.11].)

If \mathbb{K} is a commutative complete local ring, we denote by $\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$ the Karoubi envelope of the additive hull of $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$. We define $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})}^{\bullet}(M, N)$ in the obvious way.

Remark 10.1. In this case, contrary to the situation in §4.2, the roots do *not* generate $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}}^*$ (unless the generalized Cartan matrix A is finite). Hence we need to consider the “polynomial” morphisms in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$; they cannot be expressed in terms of the other generators in general.

10.2. More on Bott–Samelson parity complexes. Let us fix now a Noetherian commutative ring \mathbb{K} of finite global dimension. Recall the monoidal category $(D_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{b}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}), \star^{\mathcal{B}})$ defined in §9.2. Below we will also use an analogue of this construction of $\star^{\mathcal{B}}$ in the case of 3 variables: given $\mathcal{F}_1, \mathcal{F}_2, \mathcal{F}_3$ in $D_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{b}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, we set

$$\text{Conv}_3(\mathcal{F}_1, \mathcal{F}_2, \mathcal{F}_3) := \mathfrak{m}_{3*}(\mathcal{F}_1 \tilde{\boxtimes} \mathcal{F}_2 \tilde{\boxtimes} \mathcal{F}_3),$$

where $\mathfrak{m}_3: \mathcal{G} \times^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{G} \times^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}$ is the morphism induced by multiplication in \mathcal{G} , and $\mathcal{F}_1 \tilde{\boxtimes} \mathcal{F}_2 \tilde{\boxtimes} \mathcal{F}_3$ is the unique object in $D_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{b}}(\mathcal{G} \times^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{G} \times^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ whose pullback to $\mathcal{G} \times \mathcal{G} \times \mathcal{X}$ is $q^* \mathcal{F}_1 \boxtimes q^* \mathcal{F}_2 \boxtimes \mathcal{F}_3$. Of course, there exists canonical isomorphisms

$$(\mathcal{F}_1 \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{F}_2) \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{F}_3 \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Conv}_3(\mathcal{F}_1, \mathcal{F}_2, \mathcal{F}_3) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{F}_1 \star^{\mathcal{B}} (\mathcal{F}_2 \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{F}_3)$$

whose composition is the associativity constraint for the product $\star^{\mathcal{B}}$.

The “Bott–Samelson parity complex” $\mathcal{E}_{\underline{w}}$ defined in §9.3 is defined only up to (canonical) isomorphism, since one needs to choose the order in which the convolution products are taken. To remedy this we introduce a *canonical* object $\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w})$ as follows. For an expression $\underline{w} = (s_1, \dots, s_r)$ we define the corresponding Bott–Samelson resolution

$$\text{BS}(\underline{w}) := \mathcal{P}_{s_1} \times^{\mathcal{B}} \dots \times^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{P}_{s_r} / \mathcal{B},$$

and denote by $\pi_{\underline{w}}: \text{BS}(\underline{w}) \rightarrow \mathcal{X}$ the natural (proper) morphism. Then we set

$$\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w}) := (\pi_{\underline{w}})_* \mathbb{K}_{\text{BS}(\underline{w})}[\ell(\underline{w})].$$

Lemma 10.2. *For any expressions \underline{w} and \underline{v} , there exists a canonical isomorphism*

$$\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w}) \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{v}) \cong \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{wv}),$$

where \underline{wv} is the concatenation of \underline{w} and \underline{v} .

Proof. It can be easily checked that the complex $\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w}) \tilde{\boxtimes} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{v})$ is canonically isomorphic to (the extension by 0 of) the direct image of the constant sheaf on

$$q^{-1}(\text{BS}(\underline{w})) \times^{\mathcal{B}} \text{BS}(\underline{v}) = \text{BS}(\underline{wv})$$

under the natural projection to $\mathcal{G} \times^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{X}$. The composition of this projection with the morphism induced by \mathfrak{m} identifies with $\pi_{\underline{wv}}$, and the claim follows. \square

We will consider the category

$$\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$$

whose objects are the pairs (\underline{w}, n) where \underline{w} is an expression and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, and whose morphisms are defined as follows:

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}((\underline{w}, n), (\underline{v}, m)) := \text{Hom}_{D_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{b}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w})[n], \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{v})[m]).$$

We endow this category with a monoidal product \star by declaring that

$$(\underline{w}, n) \star (\underline{v}, m) := (\underline{wv}, n + m)$$

and using the canonical isomorphism in Lemma 10.2 to define the product of morphisms.

If \mathbb{K} and \mathbb{K}' are Noetherian commutative rings of finite global dimension, and if we are given a ring morphism $\mathbb{K} \rightarrow \mathbb{K}'$, then we have an “extension of scalars” functor

$$\mathbb{K}' := \mathbb{K}' \overset{L}{\otimes}_{\mathbb{K}} (-): D_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{b}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow D_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{b}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}').$$

Standard compatibility properties of extension of scalars with direct and inverse image functors show that for any expression \underline{w} there exists a canonical isomorphism $\mathbb{K}'(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w})) \cong \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}'}(\underline{w})$. In particular, it follows that the functor \mathbb{K}' defines in a natural way a monoidal functor from $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ to $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}')$, which we will denote by the same symbol. The following result is standard, see e.g. [MR, Lemma 2.2(2)].

Lemma 10.3. *For any expressions \underline{w} and \underline{v} and any $n, m \in \mathbb{Z}$, the \mathbb{K} -module*

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}((\underline{w}, n), (\underline{v}, m))$$

is free, and the functor \mathbb{K}' induces an isomorphism

$$\mathbb{K}' \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}((\underline{w}, n), (\underline{v}, m)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}')}((\underline{w}, n), (\underline{v}, m)).$$

Assume now that \mathbb{K} is a Noetherian commutative complete local ring, and recall the category $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ defined in §9.3. We can define a natural fully-faithful monoidal functor

$$(10.3) \quad \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$$

sending (\underline{w}, n) to $\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w})[n]$. In this case any indecomposable object in the category $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ is a direct factor in an object $\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w})[n]$, see [JMW]. We deduce the following lemma.

Lemma 10.4. *Assume that \mathbb{K} is a Noetherian commutative complete local ring. The functor (10.3) realizes $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, as a monoidal category, as the Karoubi envelope of the additive hull of the monoidal category $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$.*

10.3. Statement of the equivalences. The main result of this subsection is the following.

Theorem 10.5. *Assume that \mathbb{K} is a Noetherian commutative complete local ring and that there exists a ring morphism $\mathbb{Z}' \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$. Then there exists an equivalence of additive monoidal categories*

$$\Delta: \mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}).$$

In view of Lemma 10.4 and the construction of the category $\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$, Theorem 10.5 will follow from the following result, which applies to more general coefficients.

Theorem 10.6. *Let \mathbb{K} be a Noetherian commutative ring of finite global dimension, and assume that there exists a ring morphism $\mathbb{Z}' \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$. Then there exists an equivalence of monoidal categories*

$$\Delta_{\text{BS}}: \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}).$$

The remainder of the section is devoted to the proof of Theorem 10.6: in §§10.4–10.5 we construct a monoidal functor $\Delta_{\text{BS}}: \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G}) \rightarrow \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ which is obviously essentially surjective. Then in §10.6 we show that this functor is fully-faithful, which completes the proof of Theorem 10.6, hence also of Theorem 10.5.

10.4. Construction of the functor Δ_{BS} .

10.4.1. Principle of the construction. In this subsection we assume that \mathbb{K} is a Noetherian commutative ring of finite global dimension, and that there exists a ring morphism $\mathbb{Z}' \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$. Our goal is to construct a monoidal functor

$$\Delta_{\text{BS}}: \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G}) \rightarrow \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}).$$

The definition on objects is obvious: we simply set $\Delta_{\text{BS}}(B_{\underline{w}}\langle n \rangle) = (\underline{w}, n)$. To define this functor on morphisms, we will explain how to define the image of a morphism $\phi: B_{\underline{w}}\langle n \rangle \rightarrow B_{\underline{w}'}\langle n \rangle$ where \underline{w}' is either equal to \underline{w} or obtained from \underline{w} by one of the substitutions

$$(10.4) \quad s \dashrightarrow \emptyset, \quad \emptyset \dashrightarrow s, \quad ss \dashrightarrow s, \quad s \dashrightarrow ss, \quad st \cdots \dashrightarrow ts \cdots,$$

(where $s, t \in S$, $s \neq t$, and st has finite order $m_{s,t}$, the number of terms on each side of the last substitution being $m_{s,t}$), and ϕ is induced by the corresponding “elementary” morphism (polynomial, upper dot, lower dot, trivalent morphism or $2m_{s,t}$ -valent morphism). Then we will check that these images satisfy the relations from [EW2]. In fact we will only consider the case when $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{Z}'$. Then using Lemma 10.3 one can deduce the definition of the morphisms in the case of any \mathbb{K} , and the fact that the relations hold over \mathbb{Z}' implies that they also hold over \mathbb{K} .

In fact, we only need to define the images of the morphisms associated with the polynomials and the substitutions in (10.4). For instance, if one knows the definition of the image $\psi: \mathcal{E}(s) \rightarrow \mathcal{E}(\emptyset)[1]$ of the “upper dot morphism” $B_s \rightarrow B_{\emptyset}\langle 1 \rangle$, for any expressions \underline{u} and \underline{v} one defines the image of the induced morphism $B_{\underline{u}s\underline{v}} \rightarrow B_{\underline{u}\underline{v}}\langle 1 \rangle$ as the composition

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\underline{u}s\underline{v}) &\xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Conv}_3(\mathcal{E}(\underline{u}), \mathcal{E}(s), \mathcal{E}(\underline{v})) \\ &\xrightarrow{\text{Conv}_3(\mathcal{E}(\underline{u}), \psi, \mathcal{E}(\underline{v}))} \text{Conv}_3(\mathcal{E}(\underline{u}), \mathcal{E}(\emptyset), \mathcal{E}(\underline{v}))[1] \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{E}(\underline{u}\underline{v})[1] \end{aligned}$$

where the first and third morphisms are the canonical isomorphisms (given by the obvious analogue of Lemma 10.2).

The definition of these images occupies the rest of this subsection. Then in §10.5 we prove that these morphisms satisfy the required relations.

10.4.2. *Polynomials.* As noted in (10.1), for $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$ the Borel isomorphism gives us a canonical identification

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}(\emptyset), \mathcal{E}(\emptyset)[2m]) \cong H_{\mathcal{B}}^{2m}(\mathrm{pt}, \mathbb{Z}') = \mathrm{Sym}_{\mathbb{Z}'}^m(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}'}^*).$$

We send the morphism $B_{\emptyset} \rightarrow B_{\emptyset}\langle 2m \rangle$ given a region labelled by $f \in \mathrm{Sym}_{\mathbb{Z}'}^m(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}'}^*)$ to the corresponding map $\mathcal{E}(\emptyset) \rightarrow \mathcal{E}(\emptyset)[2m]$ under this identification:

$$\Delta_{\mathrm{BS}} \left(\begin{array}{c} f \end{array} \right) := \mathcal{E}(\emptyset) \xrightarrow{f} \mathcal{E}(\emptyset)[2m].$$

10.4.3. *Dot morphisms.* Recall the inclusion $i_{\mathrm{id}}: \mathcal{X}_{\mathrm{id}} = \mathcal{B}/\mathcal{B} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{G}/\mathcal{B}$. We define the image of the upward dot morphism attached to a simple reflection $s \in S$ to be the adjunction morphism:

$$\Delta_{\mathrm{BS}} \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ s \end{array} \right) := a_*: \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) \rightarrow i_{\mathrm{id}*} i_{\mathrm{id}}^* \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) = \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(\emptyset)[1].$$

(Because $(f \circ g)^* \cong g^* f^*$ for two maps f and g , we have canonically $i_{\mathrm{id}}^* \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) = i_{\mathrm{id}}^* p_s^* \mathbb{Z}'_{\mathrm{pt}}[1] = \mathbb{Z}'_{\mathcal{B}/\mathcal{B}}[1]$ where $p_s: \mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathrm{pt}$ denotes the projection.)

We define the image of the downward dot morphism attached to $s \in S$ to be the adjunction morphism:

$$\Delta_{\mathrm{BS}} \left(\begin{array}{c} s \\ \bullet \end{array} \right) := a_!: \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(\emptyset) = i_{\mathrm{id}!} i_{\mathrm{id}}^! \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[1] \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[1].$$

(Because $(f \circ g)^! \cong g^! f^!$ for two maps f and g , we have canonically $i_{\mathrm{id}}^! \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[1] = i_{\mathrm{id}}^! \mathbb{D}_{\mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B}}^{\mathbb{Z}'} = i_{\mathrm{id}}^! p_s^! \mathbb{Z}'_{\mathrm{pt}} = \mathbb{Z}'_{\mathcal{B}/\mathcal{B}}$, where as above $p_s: \mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathrm{pt}$ denotes the projection. Here the identification $\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) = \mathbb{Z}'_{\mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B}} = \mathbb{D}_{\mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}[-1]$ is canonical because $\mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B}$ is smooth of complex dimension 1 and we have chosen once and for all $\sqrt{-1} \in \mathbb{C}$.)

10.4.4. *Trivalent vertices.* We fix a simple reflection $s \in S$.

Lemma 10.7. *There exists an isomorphism $\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ss) \cong \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[1] \oplus \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1]$.*

Proof. There exists isomorphisms

$$\mathrm{BS}(ss) \cong \mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B} \cong \mathbb{P}^1 \times \mathbb{P}^1$$

such that the morphism π_{ss} identifies with the second projection $\mathbb{P}^1 \times \mathbb{P}^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^1$. Then the decomposition follows e.g. from the projection formula together with the known description of the cohomology of \mathbb{P}^1 . \square

In particular, from Lemma 10.7 we deduce the following isomorphisms:

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ss)[-1]) = \mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)) = H_{\mathcal{B}}^0(\mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B}; \mathbb{Z}') = \mathbb{Z}',$$

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ss), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1]) = \mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1], \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1]) = H_{\mathcal{B}}^0(\mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B}; \mathbb{Z}') = \mathbb{Z}'.$$

Lemma 10.8. (1) *Composition with the morphism*

$$\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ss)[-1] \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1] \xrightarrow{\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) \star a_*[-1]} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}(\emptyset) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)$$

induces an isomorphism

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ss)[-1]) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)).$$

(2) *Composition with the morphism*

$$\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1] \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(\emptyset)[-1] \xrightarrow{\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) \star^{a_1}[-1]} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ss)$$

induces an isomorphism

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ss), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1]) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1], \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1]).$$

Proof. Statement (1) follows from the observation that one can choose the decomposition $\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ss) \cong \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[1] \oplus \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1]$ of Lemma 10.7 so that our morphism identifies with the shift by $[-1]$ of the projection on the first factor. The proof of (2) is similar. \square

We now define

$$b_1 \in \mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ss)[-1]) \quad \text{and} \quad b_2 \in \mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ss), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1])$$

to be the unique elements which map to the identity in $\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s))$ and $\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1], \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(s)[-1])$ respectively under the isomorphisms of Lemma 10.8. We set:

$$\Delta_{\mathrm{BS}} \left(\begin{array}{c} s \quad s \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \quad s \end{array} \right) := b_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta_{\mathrm{BS}} \left(\begin{array}{c} s \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ s \quad s \end{array} \right) := b_2.$$

10.4.5. $2m_{s,t}$ -valent vertices. Fix s, t and define

$$m_{st} := \begin{cases} 2 & \text{if } \langle \alpha_s^\vee, \alpha_t \rangle = \langle \alpha_t^\vee, \alpha_s \rangle = 0; \\ 3 & \text{if } \langle \alpha_s^\vee, \alpha_t \rangle \langle \alpha_t^\vee, \alpha_s \rangle = 1; \\ 4 & \text{if } \langle \alpha_s^\vee, \alpha_t \rangle \langle \alpha_t^\vee, \alpha_s \rangle = 2; \\ 6 & \text{if } \langle \alpha_s^\vee, \alpha_t \rangle \langle \alpha_t^\vee, \alpha_s \rangle = 3; \\ \infty & \text{if } \langle \alpha_s^\vee, \alpha_t \rangle \langle \alpha_t^\vee, \alpha_s \rangle > 3. \end{cases}$$

Then m_{st} is the order of $st \in W$. (Here, $\alpha_s, \alpha_t, \alpha_s^\vee, \alpha_t^\vee$ are the roots and coroots attached to s and t .)

From now on we fix a pair $s, t \in S$ with $m_{st} < \infty$ and abbreviate $m := m_{st}$. Set

$$w_I := sts \cdots \quad (\text{with } m \text{ terms})$$

and let $W_I := \langle s, t \rangle$. To simplify notation we also set

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{F}_s &:= \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(st \cdots) & (m \text{ terms}), \\ \mathcal{F}_t &:= \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(ts \cdots) & (m \text{ terms}). \end{aligned}$$

Lemma 10.9. *The \mathbb{Z}' -module $\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{F}_s, \mathcal{F}_t)$ is free of rank 1.*

Proof. By Lemma 10.3, the \mathbb{Z}' -module under consideration is free, and we have

$$\mathbb{Q} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}'} \mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{F}_s, \mathcal{F}_t) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{Q}(\mathcal{F}_s), \mathbb{Q}(\mathcal{F}_t)).$$

By Kazhdan–Lusztig theory and a calculation in the Hecke algebra we have isomorphisms:

$$\mathbb{Q}(\mathcal{F}_s) \cong \mathcal{IC}_{w_I} \oplus \bigoplus_{\substack{x \in W_I, \\ x \neq w_I, sx < x}} \mathcal{IC}_x^{\oplus m_x}, \quad \mathbb{Q}(\mathcal{F}_t) \cong \mathcal{IC}_{w_I} \oplus \bigoplus_{\substack{x \in W_I, \\ x \neq w_I, tx < x}} \mathcal{IC}_x^{\oplus m_x}$$

for some integers m_x . In particular, $\mathbb{Q}(\mathcal{F}_s)$ and $\mathbb{Q}(\mathcal{F}_t)$ are semi-simple perverse sheaves and only have one simple factor in common. Hence $\mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{Q}(\mathcal{F}_s), \mathbb{Q}(\mathcal{F}_t)) = \mathbb{Q}$, and the claim follows. \square

Lemma 10.10. *We have decompositions*

$$\mathcal{F}_s = \underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m] \oplus \mathcal{C}_s \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{F}_t = \underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m] \oplus \mathcal{C}_t$$

where $\mathcal{C}_s, \mathcal{C}_t$ are complexes supported on $\overline{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}} \setminus \mathcal{X}_{w_I}$.

Proof. By symmetry it is enough to show one decomposition. Set $\underline{w} := st \cdots$ (with m terms); then by definition we have $\mathcal{F}_s = \pi_{w*} \underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\text{BS}(\underline{w})}[m]$. It is well known that $\pi_{\underline{w}}$ is birational and has connected fibers. Hence if $\tau_{\leq -m}$ denotes the truncation for the standard t-structure, we have a map

$$\alpha: \underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m] \cong \tau_{\leq -m} \mathcal{F}_s \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_s$$

which is an isomorphism over the Schubert cell $\mathcal{X}_{w_I} \subset \mathcal{X}$. Dualizing α we get a map (by the self-duality of both sheaves)

$$\beta: \mathcal{F}_s \rightarrow \underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m]$$

which is again an isomorphism over $\mathcal{X}_{w_I} \subset \mathcal{X}$. Hence the composition

$$\underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m] \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_s \rightarrow \underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m]$$

is an isomorphism, since the morphism

$$\text{Hom}(\underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m], \underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m]) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(\underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m], \underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m]) \cong \mathbb{Z}'$$

induced by restriction is an isomorphism. Hence $\underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m]$ is a summand of \mathcal{F}_s as claimed. Then we can write

$$\mathcal{F}_s = \underline{\mathbb{Z}}'_{\mathcal{X}_{w_I}}[m] \oplus \mathcal{C}_s,$$

and the above considerations imply that $i_{w_I}^* \mathcal{C}_s = 0$. \square

Since both $\pi_{st \cdots}$ and $\pi_{ts \cdots}$ (with m terms in both expressions once again) are isomorphisms over \mathcal{X}_{w_I} , we have a canonical isomorphism

$$(10.5) \quad \mathrm{H}^{-m}((\mathcal{F}_s)_{w_I \mathcal{B}/\mathcal{B}}) = \mathrm{H}^0(\text{pt}, \mathbb{Z}') = \mathrm{H}^{-m}((\mathcal{F}_t)_{w_I \mathcal{B}/\mathcal{B}}).$$

We let

$$f_{s,t}: \mathcal{F}_s \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_t$$

be the unique morphism which restricts to the identity on the stalk at $w_I \mathcal{B}/\mathcal{B}$ under the identification (10.5). (The uniqueness of such a map follows from Lemma 10.9, and the existence follows from Lemma 10.10.) Then we define the image of the $2m_{st}$ -valent vertex to be $f_{s,t}$:

$$\Delta_{\text{BS}} \left(\begin{array}{c} t \quad s \quad \cdots \\ \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} \\ \text{---} \text{---} \text{---} \\ s \quad t \quad \cdots \end{array} \right) := f_{s,t}.$$

10.5. Verification of the relations. Now we prove that the morphisms defined in §10.4 satisfy the relations of the definition of $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}(\mathcal{G})$. In fact, using Lemma 10.3 once again, we see that it is enough to check that the similar morphisms for coefficients \mathbb{Q} satisfy the desired relation. For simplicity, we will use the same notation as in §10.4, but now our ring of coefficients is \mathbb{Q} instead of \mathbb{Z}' . Also, we set $R := \mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Q}}) \cong H_{\mathcal{B}}^{\bullet}(\text{pt}; \mathbb{Q})$ (see (9.2)), we denote by $R\text{-Bim}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ the category of \mathbb{Z} -graded R -bimodules, and we denote by $\langle 1 \rangle$ the functor of shift of the grading, normalized by $(M\langle 1 \rangle)_n = M_{n+1}$.

The total cohomology functor induces a functor

$$H_{\mathcal{B}}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{X}, -): \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{Q}) \rightarrow H_{\mathcal{B}}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{X}; \mathbb{Q})\text{-Mod}^{\mathbb{Z}},$$

where the right-hand side denotes the category of graded $H_{\mathcal{B}}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{X}; \mathbb{Q})$ -modules. Composition with the “restriction of scalars” functor associated with the natural morphism

$$R \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} R \rightarrow H_{\mathcal{B}}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{X}; \mathbb{Q})$$

induced by (9.2), we obtain a functor

$$\mathbb{H}: \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{Q}) \rightarrow R\text{-Bim}^{\mathbb{Z}}.$$

The following facts are known about \mathbb{H} :

- (1) \mathbb{H} is monoidal, i.e. there exists canonical isomorphisms

$$\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{F} * \mathcal{G}) \cong \mathbb{H}(\mathcal{F}) \otimes_R \mathbb{H}(\mathcal{G})$$

for \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G} in $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{Q})$;

- (2) we have $\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Q}}(s)) = R \otimes_{R^s} R[1]$ and $\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Q}}(\emptyset)) = R$.

For simplicity we abbreviate $B_s^B := \mathbb{H}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Q}}(s)) = R \otimes_{R^s} R\langle 1 \rangle$.

We now calculate the image of our morphisms under \mathbb{H} .

- (1) *Polynomials:* $\mathbb{H}(\Delta_{\text{BS}}(f))$ for $f \in \text{Sym}^m(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Q}}^*)$ is given by multiplication by f on R (as is immediate from the definitions).
- (2) *The upper dot:* Because B_s^B and R are both cyclic as R -bimodules any morphism

$$B_s^B \rightarrow R\langle 1 \rangle$$

is a scalar multiple of the morphism $m: B_s^B \rightarrow R\langle 1 \rangle: f \otimes g \mapsto fg$. From the definitions $\mathbb{H}(a_*)$ must induce the identity in degree -1 . Hence $\mathbb{H}(a_*) = m$.

- (3) *The lower dot:* It is easy to see that the space of R -bimodule homomorphisms

$$R \rightarrow B_s^B\langle 1 \rangle$$

is of dimension 1, with generator μ , where μ is given by $\mu(1) = \frac{1}{2}(\alpha_s \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes \alpha_s)$. In particular, we have $\mathbb{H}(a_!) = x \cdot \mu$ for some $x \in \mathbb{Q}$.

However, the composition

$$i_{\text{id}}^! i_{\text{id}}! \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Q}}(s) \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Q}}(s) \rightarrow i_{\text{id}*} i_{\text{id}}^* \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Q}}(s) \in \text{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Q}}(\emptyset)[-1], \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Q}}(\emptyset)[1]) = H_{\mathcal{B}}^2(\text{pt}, \mathbb{Q})$$

is given by the \mathcal{B} -weight on the tangent space of $\mathcal{P}_s/\mathcal{B}$ at \mathcal{B}/\mathcal{B} , which is α_s . We conclude that $x = 1$, or in other words that $\mathbb{H}(a_!) = \mu$.

- (4) *The trivalent vertices.* Any choice of isomorphism $R = R^s \oplus R^s\langle -2 \rangle$ of R^s -bimodules gives a decomposition

$$B_s^B \otimes_R B_s^B = B_s^B\langle 1 \rangle \oplus B_s^B\langle -1 \rangle.$$

In particular, we have

$$\mathrm{Hom}(B_s^B, B_s^B \otimes_R B_s^B \langle -1 \rangle) = \mathbb{Q},$$

$$\mathrm{Hom}(B_s^B \otimes_R B_s^B, B_s^B \langle -1 \rangle) = \mathbb{Q}.$$

Moreover, these spaces are generated by the maps

$$t_1: f \otimes g \mapsto f \otimes 1 \otimes g \in \mathrm{Hom}(B_s^B, B_s^B \otimes_R B_s^B \langle -1 \rangle)$$

$$t_2: f \otimes g \otimes h \mapsto f(\partial_s g) \otimes h \in \mathrm{Hom}(B_s^B \otimes_R B_s^B, B_s^B \langle -1 \rangle)$$

where in both cases we identify $B_s^B \otimes_R B_s^B = R \otimes_{R^s} R \otimes_{R^s} R \langle 2 \rangle$. (In the formula for t_2 , ∂_s is the Demazure operator associated with s ; see [EW2, §3.3].) In particular, $\mathbb{H}(b_i)$ is a scalar multiple of t_i for $i \in \{1, 2\}$.

However one checks easily that one has

$$(t_2 \langle 1 \rangle) \circ (\mu \otimes_R \mathrm{id}_{B_s^B}) = \mathrm{id}_{B_s^B},$$

$$(m \langle -1 \rangle \otimes_R \mathrm{id}_{B_s^B}) \circ t_1 = \mathrm{id}_{B_s^B}.$$

Hence

$$\mathbb{H}(b_1) = t_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbb{H}(b_2) = t_2$$

as follows from applying \mathbb{H} to the defining properties of b_1, b_2 .

- (5) $2m_{st}$ -valent vertices. Let \mathcal{F}_s and \mathcal{F}_t and m be as in §10.4 (but this time over \mathbb{Q}). Then we have

$$\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{F}_s) = B_s^B \otimes_R B_t^B \otimes_R \dots \quad (m \text{ terms}),$$

$$\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{F}_t) = B_t^B \otimes_R B_s^B \otimes_R \dots \quad (m \text{ terms}).$$

Analogously to the definition of the image of the $2m_{st}$ -valent vertex one can use the theory of Soergel bimodules to see that the space of graded R -bimodule homomorphisms $\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{F}_s) \rightarrow \mathbb{H}(\mathcal{F}_t)$ is of dimension 1 over \mathbb{Q} , see [Li, Proposition 4.3]. It follows from the definition of $f_{s,t}$ that $\mathbb{H}(f_{s,t})$ is the unique morphism

$$B_s^B \otimes_R B_t^B \otimes_R \dots \rightarrow B_t^B \otimes_R B_s^B \otimes_R \dots$$

which induces the identity in degree $-m$.

Now it is checked in [EW2] (see also [EK, El]) that the above assignment extends to a monoidal functor

$$\mathbb{H} \circ \Delta_{\mathrm{BS}}: \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathbb{Q}}(\mathcal{G}) \rightarrow R - \mathrm{Bim}^{\mathbb{Z}}.$$

It is also known that the functor \mathbb{H} is fully-faithful, see e.g. [BY, Proposition 3.1.6]. We conclude that our morphisms indeed satisfy the required relations.

Remark 10.11. (1) In [BY] the authors work in the setting of étale sheaves; however their arguments apply equally well in the setting of ordinary sheaves on complex varieties.

- (2) The relations in the definition of $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$ only involve subsets of S which generate a *finite* parabolic subgroup of W . Hence in the proof above one only needs the fully-faithfulness of \mathbb{H} in the case when \mathcal{G} is an ordinary complex reductive group. In this generality, this result is due to Soergel, see [S5, Proposition 2]. See also [Ha] for the case of symmetrizable Kac–Moody groups.

10.6. Fully-faithfulness of Δ_{BS} . To conclude the proof of Theorem 10.6, it remains to prove that our functor Δ_{BS} is fully-faithful. Using (10.2) and Lemma 10.3, one sees that it is enough to prove fully-faithfulness over \mathbb{Z}' .

Lemma 10.12. *Let \underline{w} and \underline{v} be expressions. The graded $\mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}'})$ -modules*

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}(\mathcal{G})}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{v}}) \quad \text{and} \quad \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{Z}')}((\underline{w}, 0), (\underline{v}, n))$$

are free of finite rank, and they have the same graded rank.

Sketch of proof. For $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}(\mathcal{G})$, the freeness follows from [EW2, Theorem 6.11]. For the category $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{Z}')$ this follows from [MR, Lemma 2.2(2)], see §9.3.

To prove that the graded ranks coincide, using adjunction it suffices to consider the case $\underline{v} = \emptyset$ (see e.g. the arguments in §5.5). In this case, using [EW2, Lemma 2.10 & Proposition 6.12], if $\underline{w} = s_1 \cdots s_r$ one sees that the graded rank of the left-hand side is the coefficient of H_{id} in the product of the Kazhdan–Lusztig elements \underline{H}_{s_i} in the Hecke algebra of (W, S) . On the other hand, the left-hand side is the dual of

$$H_{\mathcal{B}}^{\bullet}(i_{\text{id}}^! \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{Z}'}(\underline{w})).$$

The graded rank of the latter module can also be expressed in terms of the Hecke algebra of (W, S) using the methods of [MR, §3.10] (which go back at least to [Sp]). The formula for the graded rank of $\bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{Z}')}((\underline{w}, 0), (\underline{v}, n))$ obtained in this way is the same as for $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{Z}'}(\mathcal{G})$, and the lemma follows. \square

Remark 10.13. Alternatively, to prove that the graded ranks in Lemma 10.12 coincide, one can observe that these graded ranks do not depend on the ring of coefficients, and use the known equivalences, when \mathbb{K} is a field of characteristic 0, between the diagrammatic Hecke category and Soergel bimodules (see [EW2]) and between Soergel bimodules and parity complexes (which in this case coincide with the semisimple complexes), see Remark 10.11.

It is easy to prove that a graded morphism ϕ between two graded free $\mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}'})$ -modules with the same graded rank is an isomorphism iff $\mathbb{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}'} \phi$ is an isomorphism for any field \mathbb{F} such that there exists a ring morphism $\mathbb{Z}' \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$; see [MR, Lemma 2.9] for a slightly more difficult statement. This remark and Lemma 10.12 reduce the proof of fully-faithfulness to the case of coefficients in a field \mathbb{F} (which admits a ring morphism $\mathbb{Z}' \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$). Finally, it is easy to see that a morphism $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ between two graded free $\mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{F}})$ -modules with the same graded rank is an isomorphism iff the composition

$$M \xrightarrow{\phi} N \rightarrow \mathbb{F} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{F}})} N$$

is surjective (where here \mathbb{F} is considered as the trivial $\mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{F}})$ -module). Hence, using (9.3), we have finally reduced the proof of the fact that Δ_{BS} is fully-faithful to proving the following claim.

Proposition 10.14. *For any expressions \underline{w} and \underline{v} , the morphism*

$$\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{v}}: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{F}}(\mathcal{G})}^{\bullet}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{v}}) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{(\mathcal{B})}^{\text{b}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})}^{\bullet}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{v}))$$

induced by the composition of Δ_{BS} with the forgetful functor is surjective.

As in the proof of Theorem 5.3 (see §5.5), using adjunction one can reduce the proof of Proposition 10.14 to the case when $\underline{w} = \emptyset$. This special case follows from the following more general claim.

Proposition 10.15. *For any reduced expression \underline{w} for an element $w \in W$ and any expression \underline{v} , the composition*

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{\underline{w}, \underline{v}}: \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{F}}(\mathcal{G})}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\underline{v}}) &\xrightarrow{\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{v}}} \operatorname{Hom}_{D_{(\emptyset)}^{\mathbb{b}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{v})) \\ &\rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_{D_{(\emptyset)}^{\mathbb{b}}(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}, \mathbb{F})}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{v})) \end{aligned}$$

(where the second arrow is induced by the functor of restriction to $\mathcal{X}_{\geq w}$) is surjective.

Before proving Proposition 10.15 in full generality, we begin with some special cases.

Lemma 10.16. *Let \underline{y} be a reduced expression for an element $y \in W$, and let $s \in S$ be a simple reflection such that $ys > y$ in the Bruhat order. Then the morphisms $\delta_{\underline{ys}, \underline{ys}}$, $\delta_{\underline{ys}, \underline{y}ss}$, $\delta_{\underline{y}, \underline{ys}}$ and $\delta_{\underline{y}, \underline{y}ss}$ are surjective.*

Proof. Using Lemma 4.5 (but in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{F}}(\mathcal{G})$ now), as in the proof of Lemma 5.8 one reduces the case of $\delta_{\underline{ys}, \underline{y}ss}$ to that of $\delta_{\underline{y}, \underline{ys}}$, and the case of $\delta_{\underline{y}, \underline{y}ss}$ to that of $\delta_{\underline{y}, \underline{ys}}$. The case of $\delta_{\underline{ys}, \underline{ys}}$ is obvious since

$$\operatorname{Hom}_{D_{(\emptyset)}^{\mathbb{b}}(\mathcal{X}_{\geq ys}, \mathbb{F})}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{ys}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{ys})[n]) = \mathbb{F} \cdot \operatorname{id},$$

hence only the case of $\delta_{\underline{y}, \underline{ys}}$ remains. In this case, recall the inclusion $i'_y: \mathcal{X}_y \sqcup \mathcal{X}_{ys} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{X}$. Since the Bott–Samelson resolution $\pi_{\underline{ys}}$ is an isomorphism over the open subset $\mathcal{X}_y \sqcup \mathcal{X}_{ys} \subset \overline{\mathcal{X}_{ys}}$, we have

$$(i'_y)^* \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{ys}) \cong \mathbb{F}_{\mathcal{X}_y \sqcup \mathcal{X}_{ys}}[\ell(y) + 1].$$

Similarly we have

$$(i'_y)^* \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{y}) \cong \mathbb{F}_{\mathcal{X}_y}[\ell(y)]$$

(where we omit the direct image functor associated with the closed inclusion $\mathcal{X}_y \hookrightarrow \mathcal{X}_y \sqcup \mathcal{X}_{ys}$), and the functor $(i'_y)^*$ induces an isomorphism

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Hom}_{D_{(\emptyset)}^{\mathbb{b}}(\mathcal{X}_{\geq y}, \mathbb{F})}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{y}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{ys})) &\xrightarrow{\sim} \\ \operatorname{Hom}_{D_{(\emptyset)}^{\mathbb{b}}(\mathcal{X}_y \sqcup \mathcal{X}_{ys}, \mathbb{F})}(\mathbb{F}_{\mathcal{X}_y}[\ell(y)], \mathbb{F}_{\mathcal{X}_y \sqcup \mathcal{X}_{ys}}[\ell(y) + 1]). \end{aligned}$$

It is easily checked that the right-hand side is concentrated in degree 1, and 1-dimensional. It is also easy to see that the image of the morphism $\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{y}) \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{ys})$ induced by the lower dot morphism is non-zero, and the claim follows. \square

Proof of Proposition 10.15. We prove by induction on $\ell(\underline{v})$ that the statement holds for all reduced expressions \underline{w} . If $\ell(\underline{v}) = 0$, i.e. $\underline{v} = \emptyset$, then the codomain of $\delta_{\underline{w}, \underline{v}}$ vanishes unless $\underline{w} = \emptyset$, in which case it is spanned by the identity morphism; hence there is nothing to prove in this case.

Now, let \underline{v} be an expression such that $\ell(\underline{v}) > 0$. Write $\underline{v} = \underline{u}s$ where $s \in S$, and assume the result is known for \underline{u} . We distinguish two cases.

Case 1: $ws < w$. In this case, w has a reduced expression \underline{w}' ending with s . It is clear from definitions that the restriction to \mathcal{X}_w of the image under Δ_{BS} of the morphism $\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}) \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}')$ induced by a rex move $\underline{w} \rightsquigarrow \underline{w}'$ (see §4.3) is invertible. Hence it is enough to prove the surjectivity of $\delta_{\underline{w}', \underline{v}}$; in other words we can assume (replacing \underline{w} by \underline{w}' if necessary) that $\underline{w} = \underline{x}s$ for some reduced expression

\underline{x} (expressing ws). By induction, there exists a family $(f_i)_{i \in I}$ of homogeneous elements in the image of $\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{u}}$ whose image spans the vector space

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w, \mathbb{F}})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{u})),$$

and a family $(g_j)_{j \in J}$ of homogeneous elements in the image of $\gamma_{\underline{x}, \underline{u}}$ whose image spans the vector space

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq ws, \mathbb{F}})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{x}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{u})).$$

By Proposition 9.11(2), there exist morphisms

$$f'_i: \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}) \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{ws})[n_i], \quad g'_j: \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}) \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w})[m_j]$$

such that the images of the compositions

$$(f_i \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(s)[n_i]) \circ f'_i \quad \text{and} \quad (g_j \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(s)[m_j]) \circ g'_j$$

span the vector space

$$(10.6) \quad \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w, \mathbb{F}})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{v})).$$

By Lemma 10.16 we can assume that the morphisms f'_i are in the image of $\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{ws}}$, and that the morphisms g'_j are in the image of $\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{w}}$; then we obtain that (10.6) is spanned by images of vectors in the image of $\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{v}}$, and the claim follows.

Case 2: $ws > w$. By induction, there exists a family $(f_i)_{i \in I}$ of homogeneous elements in the image of $\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{u}}$ whose image spans the vector space

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w, \mathbb{F}})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{u})),$$

and a family $(g_j)_{j \in J}$ of homogeneous elements in the image of $\gamma_{\underline{ws}, \underline{u}}$ whose image spans the vector space

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq ws, \mathbb{F}})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{ws}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{u})[n]).$$

By Proposition 9.11(1), there exist morphisms

$$f'_i: \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}) \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{ws})[n_i], \quad g'_j: \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}) \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{ws})[m_j]$$

such that the compositions

$$(f_i \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(s)[n_i]) \circ f'_i \quad \text{and} \quad (g_j \star^{\mathcal{B}} \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(s)[m_j]) \circ g'_j$$

span the vector space

$$(10.7) \quad \mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}_{\geq w, \mathbb{F}})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w}), \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{v})).$$

By Lemma 10.16 we can assume that the morphisms f'_i are in the image of $\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{ws}}$, and that the morphisms g'_j are in the image of $\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{ws}}$; then we obtain that (10.7) is spanned by images of vectors in the image of $\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{v}}$, and the claim follows. \square

11. THE CASE OF THE AFFINE FLAG VARIETY

11.1. Description of the category \mathcal{D}_{BS} in Conjecture 5.1 in terms of parity complexes. We now come back to the setting of Sections 3–4, and denote by G^\vee the complex connected reductive group which is Langlands dual to G . That is to say, G^\vee has a fixed maximal torus $T^\vee \subset G^\vee$ endowed with a fixed isomorphism $X^*(T^\vee) \cong X_*(T)$, such that the root datum of (G^\vee, T^\vee) identifies with the dual of the root datum of (G, T) . We also denote by $B^\vee \subset G^\vee$ the Borel subgroup whose roots are the negative coroots of G^\vee . Next, we denote by G^\wedge the simply connected cover of the derived subgroup of G^\vee . In particular, we have a natural group morphism $G^\wedge \rightarrow G^\vee$, and we denote by T^\wedge , resp. B^\wedge , the inverse image of T^\vee , resp. B^\vee , under this morphism.

Let $\mathcal{K} := \mathbb{C}((z))$ and $\mathcal{O} := \mathbb{C}[[z]]$. Then we can consider the (ind-)group schemes $G^\wedge(\mathcal{K})$ and $G^\wedge(\mathcal{O})$. We define the Iwahori subgroup $I^\wedge \subset G^\wedge(\mathcal{O})$ as the inverse image of B^\wedge under the evaluation morphism $G^\wedge(\mathcal{O}) \rightarrow G^\wedge$ (at $z = 0$). We can similarly define $G^\vee(\mathcal{K})$, $G^\vee(\mathcal{O})$ and I^\vee , and consider the affine flag varieties

$$\mathcal{Fl}^\vee := G^\vee(\mathcal{K})/I^\vee, \quad \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge := G^\wedge(\mathcal{K})/I^\wedge$$

and their natural ind-variety structure. The morphism $G^\wedge \rightarrow G^\vee$ induces a closed embedding

$$\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge \rightarrow \mathcal{Fl}^\vee$$

which identifies \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge with the connected component of the base point I^\vee/I^\vee in \mathcal{Fl}^\vee .

Let also \mathcal{G} be the (untwisted) affine Kac–Moody group defined out of G^\wedge as in [Ku, §13.2], with integral Cartan subalgebra

$$(11.1) \quad \mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}} := \mathbb{Z}\Phi \oplus \mathbb{Z}c \oplus \mathbb{Z}d$$

(where we follow the notation of [Ku]). Then there exists a canonical surjection $\mathcal{G} \rightarrow G^\wedge(\mathcal{K})$, see [Ku, Remark 13.2.11]. Let $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{G}$ be the Borel subgroup constructed out of B^\wedge , and let $\mathcal{X} := \mathcal{G}/\mathcal{B}$ be the associated flag variety. (In other words, compared to the constructions in [Ku, §13], we switch the roles of positive and negative roots in Φ ; equivalently our Borel subgroup is deduced from that of [Ku] by conjugation by a lift of the longest element in W_{f} .) This surjection $\mathcal{G} \rightarrow G^\wedge(\mathcal{K})$ maps \mathcal{B} onto I^\wedge and induces an isomorphism

$$(11.2) \quad \mathcal{X} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge.$$

In this way the Schubert cell \mathcal{X}_w gets identified with $\mathcal{Fl}_w^\wedge := I^\wedge w I^\wedge / I^\wedge$ for any $w \in W$, and $\dim(\mathcal{X}_w) = \ell(w)$ where ℓ is the length with respect to the Coxeter structure on W considered in §3.1.

We fix a commutative Noetherian ring \mathbb{K} of finite global dimension. The surjection $\mathcal{G} \rightarrow G^\wedge(\mathcal{K})$ admits a canonical splitting over $G^\wedge(\mathcal{O})$; in particular we can view I^\wedge as a subgroup of \mathcal{B} , in such a way that the identification (11.2) is I^\wedge -equivariant. Then we obtain the following commutative diagram of algebra morphisms, where the vertical morphisms are the canonical identifications:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{H}_{\mathcal{B}}^\bullet(\text{pt}; \mathbb{K}) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{H}_{I^\wedge}^\bullet(\text{pt}; \mathbb{K}) \\ \downarrow \wr & & \downarrow \wr \\ \mathcal{O}(\mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{O}(\mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}\Phi). \end{array}$$

Here $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}$ is as in (11.1), and $\mathbb{Z}\Phi$ is identified with the dual of the character lattice of T^\wedge .

In this special case we can consider as in §9.3 the monoidal category $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, with the convolution product $\star^{\mathcal{B}}$, and the full subcategories $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ and $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$. Analogous constructions provide a monoidal category $D_{I^\wedge}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ with convolution product \star^{I^\wedge} , and categories $\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ and $\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ of parity complexes. The identification (11.2) and the embedding $I^\wedge \hookrightarrow \mathcal{B}$ allow to define a forgetful functor

$$\nu: \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow \text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K}),$$

which is easily seen to be a monoidal functor.

The following lemma follows from standard arguments, see [MR, Lemma 2.2(2)].

Lemma 11.1. *For any \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G} in $\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$, the functor ν induces an isomorphism of graded left $\mathbf{H}_{I^\wedge}^\bullet(\text{pt}; \mathbb{K})$ -modules*

$$\mathbf{H}_{I^\wedge}^\bullet(\text{pt}; \mathbb{K}) \otimes_{\mathbf{H}_{\mathcal{B}}^\bullet(\text{pt}; \mathbb{K})} \text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})}^\bullet(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})}^\bullet(\nu\mathcal{F}, \nu\mathcal{G}).$$

From now we assume that \mathbb{K} satisfies (4.4) and (4.5).⁸ Then we can consider the categories $\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$ defined as in §10.1 (in our special case of the group \mathcal{G} defined above), and the categories \mathcal{D}_{BS} and \mathcal{D} defined in §4.2 (for the coefficients \mathbb{K}). The only difference in the definition of these categories is the choice of realization: the categories $\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$ are defined in terms of the realization on the vector space $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}} := \mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}$, where $\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}$ is as in (11.1), and \mathcal{D} and \mathcal{D}_{BS} are defined in terms of the realization on $\mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}\Phi$. But by construction there exists a canonical W -equivariant embedding $\mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}\Phi \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}}$, which induces a surjection $\mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}}) \twoheadrightarrow \mathcal{O}(\mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}\Phi)$. Using this surjection one can define a natural functor

$$\eta: \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G}) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}$$

which is the identity on objects, which sends the morphism $B_{\emptyset} \rightarrow B_{\emptyset}\langle \deg(f) \rangle$ in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$ associated with an element $f \in \mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}})$ to the morphism $B_{\emptyset} \rightarrow B_{\emptyset}\langle \deg(f) \rangle$ in \mathcal{D}_{BS} associated with the image of f in $\mathcal{O}(\mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}\Phi)$, and which sends the dot morphisms, trivalent morphisms and $2m_{s,t}$ -valent morphisms in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$ to the analogous morphisms in \mathcal{D}_{BS} . (See [EW2, Remark 3.19] for a similar construction.) This functor is clearly monoidal.

The following lemma is an immediate consequence of the existence of the double leaves basis, see [EW2, Theorem 6.11].

Lemma 11.2. *For any M, N in $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$, the functor η induces an isomorphism of graded left $\mathcal{O}(\mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}\Phi)$ -modules*

$$\mathcal{O}(\mathbb{K} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Z}\Phi) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{K}})} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})}^\bullet(M, N) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}}^\bullet(\eta M, \eta N).$$

Finally, recall from Theorem 10.6 that we have an equivalence of monoidal categories

$$\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K}).$$

Comparing Lemma 11.1 and Lemma 11.2, from this equivalence we deduce the following result.

⁸Since here we consider only the categories \mathcal{D}_{BS} and \mathcal{D} , the assumption (4.4) does not play any role in this subsection, and can henceforth be omitted.

Theorem 11.3. *There exists a canonical equivalence of monoidal categories*

$$\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K}).$$

If \mathbb{K} is furthermore a complete local ring, this equivalence induces an equivalence of additive monoidal categories

$$\mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K}).$$

This theorem provides a geometric description of the category \mathcal{D} used in Sections 4–5.

Remark 11.4. In §1.4 we recalled the definition of the p -canonical basis of \mathcal{H} using the category \mathcal{D} . It might be more natural to define this p -canonical basis using the category $\mathcal{D}^k(\mathcal{G})$. (This is the definition used in [JW].) But in fact the two definitions coincide: this follows from the observation that the functor $\mathcal{D}^k(\mathcal{G}) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ obtained from η sends indecomposable objects to indecomposable objects, which is a consequence of Lemma 11.2.

11.2. Iwahori–Whittaker sheaves. In §11.1 we obtained a geometric description of the category \mathcal{D} . The goal of the remainder of this section is to give a geometric description of $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$. For this one needs to change the setting, and work with étale sheaves instead of ordinary sheaves on a complex variety.

Namely, in Section 9 we have worked with a *complex* Kac–Moody group \mathcal{G} . But if we choose an algebraically closed field \mathbb{F} of positive characteristic, one can consider the similar Kac–Moody group and its flag variety over \mathbb{F} instead of \mathbb{C} , see [M1]. We will do so from now on, but for simplicity we continue to use the same notation as in Section 9. We will assume that \mathbb{K} is either $\mathbb{Z}/p^n\mathbb{Z}$ (with $n \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 1}$), or a finite field extension of \mathbb{Q}_p , or the ring of integers in such an extension, or $\overline{\mathbb{Q}_p}$, where in each case $p \neq \text{char}(\mathbb{F})$. (In particular, \mathbb{K} is always a complete local ring in this setting.) In each of these cases, one can consider the \mathcal{B} -equivariant derived category $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ of étale \mathbb{K} -sheaves on \mathcal{X} , see [BBD, §§2.2.9–2.2.18]. With this definition, all the results of Section 9 remain true, with identical proofs. In particular, Theorem 11.3 also holds in this setting. (Here, the group G^\wedge is now defined over \mathbb{F} , and \mathcal{X} is defined as $\mathbb{F}((z))$.)

The main point of working in the étale setting is that now we can choose a nontrivial character ψ of the prime subfield of \mathbb{F} , and consider the corresponding Artin–Schreier local system \mathcal{L}_ψ on $\mathbb{G}_{a,\mathbb{F}}$, see [AB, BY, AR1]. Let $I_\circ^\wedge \subset G^\wedge(\mathcal{O})$ be the inverse image under the evaluation morphism $G^\wedge(\mathcal{O}) \rightarrow G^\wedge$ of the unipotent radical U_+^\wedge of the Borel subgroup which is opposite to B^\wedge (with respect to T^\wedge). The quotient $U_+^\wedge/[U_+^\wedge, U_+^\wedge]$ identifies naturally with the product of the root subgroups corresponding to the roots α^\vee with $\alpha \in \Sigma$; we choose an identification of this root subgroup with $\mathbb{G}_{a,\mathbb{F}}$ for any α , and consider the morphism

$$\chi: I_\circ^\wedge \rightarrow U_+^\wedge \rightarrow \mathbb{G}_{a,\mathbb{F}}$$

where the first map is the natural quotient morphism, and the second one is deduced from the identifications above and the addition morphism $\mathbb{G}_{a,\mathbb{F}}^{\times \Sigma} \rightarrow \mathbb{G}_{a,\mathbb{F}}$. Then we consider the (I_\circ^\wedge, χ) -equivariant derived category

$$D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K}),$$

i.e. the category defined as in [AR1, Appendix A] for the local system $\chi^*(\mathcal{L}_\psi)$.

Consider the decomposition of $\mathcal{F}l^\wedge$ into I_\circ^\wedge -orbits:

$$\mathcal{F}l^\wedge = \bigsqcup_{w \in W} \mathcal{F}l_{w,\circ}^\wedge,$$

where $\mathcal{F}l_{w,\circ}^\wedge := I_\circ^\wedge w I^\wedge / I^\wedge$. Then $\mathcal{F}l_{w,\circ}^\wedge$ supports an (I_\circ^\wedge, χ) -equivariant local system iff $w \in {}^f W$; in this case there exists a unique such local system which is free of rank 1 over \mathbb{K} , and we denote it $\mathcal{L}_{w,\circ}^\chi$. Also, in this case we have $\dim(\mathcal{F}l_{w,\circ}^\wedge) = \ell(w) + \ell(w_0) = \ell(w_0 w)$, where w_0 is the longest element in W_f . For $w \in W$ we denote by $i_{w,\circ}: \mathcal{F}l_{w,\circ}^\wedge \rightarrow \mathcal{F}l^\wedge$ the inclusion. Then for $w \in {}^f W$ we set

$$\Delta_w^\chi := (i_{w,\circ})_! \mathcal{L}_{w,\circ}^\chi[\ell(w) + \ell(w_0)], \quad \nabla_w^\chi := (i_{w,\circ})_* \mathcal{L}_{w,\circ}^\chi[\ell(w) + \ell(w_0)].$$

These objects satisfy

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})}(\Delta_w^\chi, \nabla_v^\chi) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{K} & \text{if } w = v \text{ and } n = 0; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

We have an “averaging functor”

$$\mathrm{Av}_\chi: D_{I^\wedge}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K}).$$

(More precisely, this functor is the composition of the forgetful functor to the constructible derived category, followed by any choice of the functors defined as in [AR1, §A.2]; the two choices provide canonically isomorphic functors, as explained in [AR1, §5.5], see also [AB, BY].) For any $w \in {}^f W$ and $v \in W_f$ this functor satisfies

$$(11.3) \quad \mathrm{Av}_\chi(\Delta_{vw}) \cong \Delta_w^\chi, \quad \mathrm{Av}_\chi(\nabla_{vw}) \cong \nabla_w^\chi,$$

where the objects Δ_x and ∇_x are as in §9.3, see e.g. [BY, Lemma 4.4.8].

There exists a natural convolution functor

$$(-) \star^{I^\wedge} (-): D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K}) \times D_{I^\wedge}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K}),$$

defined in a way similar to the convolution on $D_{I^\wedge}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$. It is easily checked that the functor Av_χ is compatible with this product, in the sense that for \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G} in $D_{I^\wedge}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ there exists a canonical and functorial isomorphism

$$(11.4) \quad \mathrm{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{F} \star^{I^\wedge} \mathcal{G}) \cong \mathrm{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{F}) \star^{I^\wedge} \mathcal{G}.$$

For $s \in S$, we can consider in a similar way the category

$$D_{(I_\circ^{s,\wedge}, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^{s,\wedge}, \mathbb{K}),$$

where $\mathcal{F}l^{s,\wedge}$ is the parabolic flag variety associated with the minimal parahoric subgroup of $G^\wedge(\mathcal{K})$ associated with s . The I_\circ^\wedge -orbits on $\mathcal{F}l^{s,\wedge}$ are parametrized in a natural way by $W^s = \{w \in W \mid ws > w\}$; those which support an (I_\circ^\wedge, χ) -equivariant local system correspond to the elements in

$$\{w \in W^s \mid w \in {}^f W \text{ and } ws \in {}^f W\};$$

we denote the corresponding standard and costandard sheaves $\Delta_w^{s,\chi}$ and $\nabla_w^{s,\chi}$ respectively.

We also have a projection $q^s: \mathcal{F}l^\wedge \rightarrow \mathcal{F}l^{s,\wedge}$, and the corresponding functors $(q^s)_! = (q^s)_*$, $(q^s)^*$ and $(q^s)^!$.

Lemma 11.5. *Let $w \in {}^f W$.*

(1) If $w \in W^s$ and $ws \notin {}^fW$, then

$$(q^s)_! \Delta_w^\chi = (q^s)_! \nabla_w^\chi = 0.$$

(2) If $w \in W^s$ and $ws \in {}^fW$, then

$$(q^s)_! \Delta_w^\chi \cong \Delta_{ws}^{s,\chi} \quad \text{and} \quad (q^s)_! \nabla_w^\chi \cong \nabla_{ws}^{s,\chi}.$$

(3) If $ws < w$ (which implies that $ws \in {}^fW$), then

$$(q^s)_! \Delta_w^\chi \cong \Delta_{ws}^{s,\chi}[-1] \quad \text{and} \quad (q^s)_! \nabla_w^\chi \cong \nabla_{ws}^{s,\chi}[1].$$

Proof. Consider the restriction of q^s to $\mathcal{F}l_{w,\circ}^\wedge$. If $w \in W^s$ and $ws \notin {}^fW$, then this restriction is an \mathbb{A}^1 -fibration, and the restriction of $\mathcal{L}_{w,\circ}^\chi$ to the fibers are isomorphic to \mathcal{L}_ψ , so that $(q^s)_! \Delta_w^\chi = (q^s)_! \nabla_w^\chi = 0$.

If $w \in W^s$ and $ws \in {}^fW$, then the restriction of q^s is an isomorphism, so that $(q^s)_! \Delta_w^\chi \cong \Delta_{ws}^{s,\chi}$ and $(q^s)_! \nabla_w^\chi \cong \nabla_{ws}^{s,\chi}$.

Finally, if $w \notin W^s$, then the restriction of q^s to $\mathcal{F}l_{w,\circ}^\wedge$ is an \mathbb{A}^1 -fibration, and the restriction of $\mathcal{L}_{w,\circ}^\chi$ to the fibers are trivial; it follows that $(q^s)_! \Delta_w^\chi \cong \Delta_{ws}^{s,\chi}[-1]$ and $(q^s)_! \nabla_w^\chi \cong \nabla_{ws}^{s,\chi}[1]$. \square

Lemma 11.6. *Let $w \in W^s$, and assume that $w \in {}^fW$ and $ws \in {}^fW$. There exists distinguished triangles*

$$\Delta_{ws}^\chi[-1] \rightarrow (q^s)^* \Delta_{ws}^{s,\chi} \rightarrow \Delta_w^\chi \xrightarrow{[1]} \quad \text{and} \quad \nabla_w^\chi \rightarrow (q^s)^! \nabla_{ws}^{s,\chi} \rightarrow \nabla_{ws}^\chi[1] \xrightarrow{[1]}.$$

Proof. These distinguished triangles are obtained by applying the standard distinguished triangles of functors attached to the decomposition $\mathcal{F}l_{w,\circ}^\wedge \sqcup \mathcal{F}l_{ws,\circ}^\wedge$ into a closed and an open orbit to the inverse image of the irreducible (I_\circ^\wedge, χ) -equivariant local system on the orbit of $\mathcal{F}l^{s,\wedge}$ attached to w . \square

11.3. Iwahori–Whittaker parity sheaves. The general theory of parity complexes from [JMW] applies verbatim in the setting of Iwahori–Whittaker sheaves. In particular, a complex \mathcal{F} in $D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ is said to be $*$ -even, resp. $!$ -even, if for any $w \in W$ we have

$$\mathcal{H}^{\text{odd}}((i_{w,\circ})^* \mathcal{F}) = 0, \quad \text{resp.} \quad \mathcal{H}^{\text{odd}}((i_{w,\circ})^! \mathcal{F}) = 0,$$

and if moreover for $w \in W$ and k even the local system

$$\mathcal{H}^k((i_{w,\circ})^* \mathcal{F}), \quad \text{resp.} \quad \mathcal{H}^{\text{odd}}((i_{w,\circ})^! \mathcal{F}),$$

is projective (equivalently, free) over \mathbb{K} . (These conditions are automatic if $w \notin {}^fW$ since in this case $(i_{w,\circ})^* \mathcal{F} = (i_{w,\circ})^! \mathcal{F} = 0$ for any \mathcal{F} in $D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$.) Then an object \mathcal{F} is called a *parity complex* if $\mathcal{F} \cong \mathcal{F}_0 \oplus \mathcal{F}_1$ where the objects \mathcal{F}_0 and $\mathcal{F}_1[1]$ are both $*$ -even and $!$ -even. We will denote by

$$\text{Parity}_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$$

the additive category of parity complexes in $D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$. For any $s \in S$, we can similarly consider the category

$$\text{Parity}_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}(\mathcal{F}l^{s,\wedge}, \mathbb{K})$$

of parity complexes in $D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^{s,\wedge}, \mathbb{K})$.

Lemma 11.7. *Let $\mathcal{F} \in D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ and $s \in S$.*

(1) *If \mathcal{F} is $*$ -even, then $(q^s)_* \mathcal{F}$ is $*$ -even.*

- (2) If \mathcal{F} is $!$ -even, then $(q^s)_*\mathcal{F}$ is $!$ -even.
- (3) If \mathcal{F} is a parity complex, then $(q^s)_*\mathcal{F}$ is a parity complex.

Proof. Clearly, (3) follows from (1) and (2). We explain the proof of (1); the proof of (2) is similar.

So, let us assume that \mathcal{F} is $*$ -even. We proceed by induction on the support of \mathcal{F} ; so we assume that \mathcal{F} is supported on a closed union $\mathcal{Y} \subset \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge$ of I_\circ^\wedge -orbits, and that $w \in W$ is such that $\mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge$ is open in \mathcal{Y} and $(i_{w,\circ})^*\mathcal{F} \neq 0$. Necessarily we have $w \in {}^fW$. Let $k: \mathcal{Y} \setminus \mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge \hookrightarrow \mathcal{Y}$ be the closed embedding, and consider the canonical distinguished triangle

$$(i_{w,\circ})!(i_{w,\circ})^!\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \rightarrow k_*k^*\mathcal{F} \xrightarrow{[1]}.$$

The object $k_*k^*\mathcal{F}$ is $*$ -even and supported on $\mathcal{Y} \setminus \mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge$, hence by induction we know that $(q^s)_*k_*k^*\mathcal{F}$ is $*$ -even. On the other hand, we have an isomorphism

$$(i_{w,\circ})!(i_{w,\circ})^!\mathcal{F} \cong \bigoplus_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} (\Delta_w^\chi[i])^{\oplus n_i},$$

where $n_i \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$ and $n_i = 0$ unless $\dim(\mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge) + i$ is even. Now it follows from Lemma 11.5 that under this condition the object $(q^s)_*(\Delta_w^\chi[i])$ is $*$ -even, and the claim follows. \square

The proof of the following lemma is very similar to that of Lemma 11.7 (using Lemma 11.6 instead of Lemma 11.5); details are left to the reader.

Lemma 11.8. *Let $s \in S$ and $\mathcal{F} \in D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{Fl}^{s,\wedge}, \mathbb{K})$.*

- (1) *If \mathcal{F} is $*$ -even, then $(q^s)^*\mathcal{F}$ is $*$ -even.*
- (2) *If \mathcal{F} is $!$ -even, then $(q^s)^*\mathcal{F}$ is $!$ -even.*
- (3) *If \mathcal{F} is a parity complex, then $(q^s)^*\mathcal{F}$ is a parity complex.*

Corollary 11.9. *For any \mathcal{E} in $\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ the object $\text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{E}) \in D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ is a parity complex.*

Proof. Since the functor $(q^s)^*(q^s)_*$ commutes with Av_χ and since any object in $\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ is a direct sum of shifts of direct summands of objects obtained from Δ_{id} by repeated application of functors $(q^s)^*(q^s)_*$ for various s , the corollary follows from the observation that $\text{Av}_\chi(\Delta_{\text{id}}) = \Delta_{\text{id}}^\chi$ is parity (since $\Delta_{\text{id}}^\chi = \nabla_{\text{id}}^\chi$, see [BY, Corollary 4.2.2]) and Lemmas 11.7 and 11.8. \square

Remark 11.10. For any $w \in {}^fW$, the general theory of parity complexes of [JMW] guarantees the uniqueness (up to isomorphism) of an indecomposable parity complex supported on $\overline{\mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge}$ and whose restriction to $\mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge$ is $\mathcal{L}_{w,\circ}^\chi[\dim(\mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge)]$, but not its existence. But now this existence follows from Corollary 11.9: in fact $\text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{E}_w)$ is a parity complex supported on $\overline{\mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge}$ and whose restriction to $\mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge$ is $\mathcal{L}_{w,\circ}^\chi[\dim(\mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge)]$; hence it admits an indecomposable direct summand whose restriction to $\mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge$ is $\mathcal{L}_{w,\circ}^\chi[\dim(\mathcal{Fl}_{w,\circ}^\wedge)]$.

Corollary 11.9 shows that the functor Av_χ restricts to a functor

$$\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow \text{Parity}_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K});$$

we will denote this restriction also by Av_χ .

Proposition 11.11. *For any \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F} in $\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$, the morphism*

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{(I_\diamond^\wedge, \chi)}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})}^\bullet(\text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{E}), \text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{F}))$$

induced by the functor Av_χ is surjective.

Sketch of proof. By construction, the functor Av_χ factors through the category $\text{Parity}_{(I^\wedge)}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$. Since the morphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{(I^\wedge)}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F})$$

induced by the forgetful functor is surjective, see (9.3), it suffices to prove that the similar morphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{(I^\wedge)}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Parity}_{(I_\diamond^\wedge, \chi)}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})}^\bullet(\text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{E}), \text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{F}))$$

is surjective. And using the Nakayama lemma and the appropriate analogue of Lemma 10.3, it suffices to consider the case when \mathbb{K} is a field.

In this setting, the surjectivity can be proved by using once again the technique of the proof of §5.5 and §10.6: namely one can assume that $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\emptyset)$ and $\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{F}}(\underline{w})$ for some expression \underline{w} , and then prove an analogue of Proposition 10.15 by defining the “sections of the !-flag” for !-parity objects in $D_{(I_\diamond^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ and $D_{(I_\diamond^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{F}l^{s, \wedge}, \mathbb{K})$ and studying the compatibility of this notion with the functors $(q^s)_*$ and $(q^s)^*$ to obtain an analogue of Proposition 9.11; details are left to the reader. \square

Proposition 11.12. *Let $w \in W$.*

- (1) *If $w \notin {}^f W$, then $\text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{E}_w) = 0$.*
- (2) *If $w \in {}^f W$, then $\text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{E}_w)$ is a non-zero indecomposable parity complex.*

Proof. If $w \notin {}^f W$, then \mathcal{E}_w is the image in $D_{I^\wedge}^b(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ of an object in the equivariant derived category of a parahoric subgroup of $G^\wedge(\mathcal{K})$ associated with a simple reflection in S_f . This implies that $\text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{E}_w) = 0$, see e.g. [BY, Lemma 4.4.6 and its proof].

If $w \in {}^f W$, then $\text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{E}_w)$ is supported on $\overline{\mathcal{F}l_{w, \circ}^\wedge}$, and its restriction to orbit $\mathcal{F}l_{w, \circ}^\wedge$ is $\mathcal{L}_{w, \circ}^X[\dim(\mathcal{F}l_{w, \circ}^\wedge)]$, see Remark 11.10. It is indecomposable by Proposition 11.11 and the fact that a quotient of a local ring is local. \square

11.4. Description of $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ in terms of Iwahori–Whittaker sheaves. By Corollary 11.9, we can define the category $\text{Parity}_{(I_\diamond^\wedge, \chi)}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ as the full (but not strictly full) subcategory of $\text{Parity}_{(I_\diamond^\wedge, \chi)}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ whose objects are the parity complexes

$$\text{Av}_\chi(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w}))[n]$$

for \underline{w} an expression and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Using (11.4), we see that this category admits a natural action of the monoidal category $\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ on the right. Moreover, using Remark 11.10, one can easily check that the Karoubi envelope of the additive hull of $\text{Parity}_{(I_\diamond^\wedge, \chi)}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$ is $\text{Parity}_{(I_\diamond^\wedge, \chi)}(\mathcal{F}l^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$.

From now on we assume that \mathbb{K} satisfies (4.4) and (4.5). Then we can consider the categories $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}$ and $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ of §4.4, with our present choice of ring of coefficients \mathbb{K} .

Theorem 11.13. *There exists a natural equivalence of categories*

$$\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Parity}_{(I_{\diamond}^{\wedge}, \chi)}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge}, \mathbb{K})$$

which is compatible with the actions of \mathcal{D}_{BS} and $\text{Parity}_{I^{\wedge}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge}, \mathbb{K})$ through the first equivalence in Theorem 11.3. As a consequence, we obtain an equivalence of categories

$$\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Parity}_{(I_{\diamond}^{\wedge}, \chi)}(\mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge}, \mathbb{K})$$

compatible with the natural actions of \mathcal{D} and $\text{Parity}_{I^{\wedge}}(\mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge}, \mathbb{K})$ through the second equivalence in Theorem 11.3.

Proof. We consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \text{Parity}_{I^{\wedge}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge}, \mathbb{K}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{Av}_{\chi} \\ \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}} & & \text{Parity}_{(I_{\diamond}^{\wedge}, \chi)}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge}, \mathbb{K}), \end{array}$$

where the left vertical arrow is the natural quotient functor. Since $\text{Av}_{\chi}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w})) = 0$ for any expression \underline{w} starting with a simple reflection in S_{f} (see the proof of Proposition 11.12), the upper horizontal arrow induces a functor

$$(11.5) \quad \mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}} \rightarrow \text{Parity}_{(I_{\diamond}^{\wedge}, \chi)}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{Fl}^{\wedge}, \mathbb{K})$$

which is the natural bijection on objects. It follows from Proposition 11.11 that this functor induces surjections on morphisms, and what remains is to prove that these surjections are in fact isomorphisms.

To prove this property, using adjunction (as e.g. in §5.5), it suffices to consider morphisms (of any degree) from $\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}$ to \overline{B}_{\emptyset} where \underline{w} is any expression. In this case, Proposition 4.7 provides a finite generating family for the \mathbb{K} -module $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$. Now, as in Lemma 10.12, one can prove that the \mathbb{K} -module

$$\bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \text{Hom}(\text{Av}_{\chi}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w})), \text{Av}_{\chi}(\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\emptyset))[n])$$

is free, and compute its rank in terms of the antispherical \mathcal{H} -module. The rank one obtains in this way is precisely the cardinality of the generating family of $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$ considered above (by Lemma 4.1). Since any surjective morphism from of a \mathbb{K} -module generated by m elements to \mathbb{K}^m must be an isomorphism, we deduce the desired claim, and the first equivalence of the theorem. The second equivalence follows by taking the Karoubi envelope of the injective hull of each of these categories. \square

11.5. Light leaves basis in $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$. As noticed in the course of the proof of Theorem 11.13, it follows from the constructions of the present section that the generating family for the \mathbb{K} -module $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$ considered in Proposition 4.7 actually form a basis of this \mathbb{K} -module, when \mathbb{K} is as in §11.2 (and satisfies (4.4) and (4.5)). In particular, this implies that for any expressions \underline{w} and \underline{v} , the graded \mathbb{K} -module $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}}^{\bullet}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\underline{v}})$ is free. We conclude the paper with the following lemma, which allows to deduce that the same property holds for some other rings of coefficients.

Lemma 11.14. *Let \mathbb{K} and \mathbb{K}' be commutative rings satisfying (4.4) and (4.5), and consider a ring morphism $\varphi: \mathbb{K} \rightarrow \mathbb{K}'$.*

- (1) Assume that φ is injective, and that the family of Proposition 4.7 forms a basis of $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\bullet, \text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$ for coefficients \mathbb{K}' . Then the same property holds for \mathbb{K} .
- (2) Assume that \mathbb{K}' is free over \mathbb{K} , and that the family of Proposition 4.7 forms a basis of $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\bullet, \text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$ for coefficients \mathbb{K} . Then the same property holds for \mathbb{K}' .

Proof. In this proof, we will denote by $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}}^{\text{asph}}$ the category $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}$ over \mathbb{K} , and by $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}'}^{\text{asph}}$ the category $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}$ over \mathbb{K}' . We use a similar convention for the categories $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}'}$.

Consider the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathbb{K}' \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset}) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}'}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset}) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \mathbb{K}' \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}}^{\bullet, \text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset}) & & \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}'}^{\bullet, \text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset}).
 \end{array}$$

Here the upper horizontal morphism is as in (10.2), and the vertical arrows are induced by the respective quotient functors. From this diagram we deduce a natural surjective morphism

$$(11.6) \quad \mathbb{K}' \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}}^{\bullet, \text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset}) \twoheadrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}'}^{\bullet, \text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset}).$$

Now we can prove (1). In fact if the property is known for \mathbb{K}' then the surjection in (11.6) must be an isomorphism. Hence the image of our family is free (over \mathbb{K}') in $\mathbb{K}' \otimes_{\mathbb{K}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}}^{\bullet, \text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$, which implies that the family is free (over \mathbb{K}) in $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}}^{\bullet, \text{asph}}}(\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_{\emptyset})$ since φ is injective.

Finally, let us prove (2). Consider the \mathbb{K} -basis of $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset})$ constructed as in the proof of Lemma 5.18. The image of this basis in $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}'}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset})$ is a \mathbb{K}' -basis of this \mathbb{K}' -module. As in the proof of Lemma 5.18, what we have to prove is that any homogeneous element in $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{K}'}^{\bullet}}(B_{\underline{w}}, B_{\emptyset})$ which factors through an object $B_{\underline{x}}\langle k \rangle$ where \underline{x} starts with a simple reflection in $S_{\mathfrak{f}}$ is a linear combination of the elements $\varphi_{\underline{e}}$ where \underline{e} does not avoid $W \setminus {}^{\mathfrak{f}}W$ and the elements $f_i \cdot \varphi_{\underline{e}}$. Choosing a basis for \mathbb{K}' over \mathbb{K} , from the knowledge of this property over \mathbb{K} one easily deduces the property over \mathbb{K}' , and the proof is complete. \square

Using Lemma 11.14(2) one obtains that the property holds over any field, then using (1) one obtains that it holds over any integral domain, and finally using (2) again one obtains that it holds for any ring which is free over an integral domain. Using the case of fields and the Nakayama lemma, one can also deduce that the property holds for any local ring. (In all these cases we assume that (4.4) and (4.5) hold.)

LIST OF NOTATIONS

Section 2

Notation	§	Description
\mathcal{A}_Ω	2.1	Subcategory of \mathcal{A} generated by simples with label in Ω
\mathcal{A}^Ω	2.1	Quotient $\mathcal{A}/\mathcal{A}_{\Lambda \setminus \Omega}$
$\text{Tilt}(\mathcal{A})$	2.3	Category of tilting objects in \mathcal{A}

Section 3

Notation	§	Description
\mathbb{k}	3.1	Algebraically closed field of characteristic p
G	3.1	Reductive group with simply-connected derived subgroup
$T \subset B$	3.1	Maximal torus and Borel subgroup
h	3.1	Coxeter number
\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{X}^+	3.1	Weight lattice and dominant weights
Φ, Φ^\vee	3.1	Roots and coroots
$\Sigma \subset \Phi^+$	3.1	Simple and positive roots
ρ	3.1	half sum of positive roots
$S_f \subset W_f$	3.1	(Finite) Weyl group and simple reflections
$S \subset W$	3.1	Affine Weyl group and simple reflections
$C_{\mathbb{Z}}$	3.1	Intersection of \mathbf{X} with fundamental alcove
λ_0	3.1	Fixed weight in $C_{\mathbb{Z}}$
μ_s	3.1	Fixed weight on the s -wall
\mathbf{X}_0^+	3.1	Intersection of \mathbf{X}^+ and $W \bullet \lambda_0$
\mathbf{X}_s^+	3.1	Intersection of \mathbf{X}^+ and $W \bullet \mu_s$
$\text{Rep}(G)$	3.1	Category of finite-dimensional algebraic G -modules
$\Delta(\lambda), \nabla(\lambda)$	3.1	Standard and costandard modules in $\text{Rep}(G)$
$\mathbb{L}(\lambda), \mathbb{T}(\lambda)$	3.1	Simple and tilting modules in $\text{Rep}(G)$
$\text{Rep}_0(G)$	3.1	Serre subcategory generated by the $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$'s with $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}_0^+$
$\text{Rep}_s(G)$	3.1	Serre subcategory generated by the $\mathbb{L}(\lambda)$'s with $\lambda \in \mathbf{X}_s^+$
$\mathbb{T}^s, \mathbb{T}_s$	3.2	Fixed functors isomorphic to translation functors
Θ_s	3.5	Wall-crossing functor $\mathbb{T}_s \mathbb{T}^s$
$\mathbb{T}(\underline{w})$	3.5	Bott–Samelson-type tilting module

Section 4

Notation	§	Description
$\mathcal{H}, \mathcal{H}_f$	4.1	Hecke algebras of (W, S) and (W_f, S_f)
H_w, \underline{H}_w	4.1	Standard and Kazhdan–Lusztig basis elements in \mathcal{H}
$\underline{H}_{\underline{w}}$	4.1	Bott–Samelson-type element in \mathcal{H}
$\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$	4.1	Antispherical \mathcal{H} -module
N_w, \underline{N}_w	4.1	Standard and Kazhdan–Lusztig basis elements in $\mathcal{M}^{\text{asph}}$
\mathfrak{h}	4.2	Realization of (W, S) over \mathbb{k}
R	4.2	Symmetric algebra of \mathfrak{h}^*
$\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}, \mathcal{D}$	4.2	Diagrammatic Hecke categories
$B_{\underline{w}}, B_w$	4.2	Bott–Samelson and indecomposable objects in \mathcal{D}
ι, τ	4.2	Autoequivalences of \mathcal{D}_{BS}
$L_{\underline{w}, \varepsilon}$	4.2	Elements of the light leaves basis
$\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\text{asph}}, \mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$	4.4	Antispherical diagrammatic Hecke categories
$\overline{B}_{\underline{w}}, \overline{B}_w$	4.4	Bott–Samelson and indecomposable objects in $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$

Section 5

Notation	§	Description
Ψ	5.2	Functor in Theorem 5.3
$\alpha_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}, \beta_{\underline{x}, \underline{y}}$	5.3	Morphisms induced by the functor Ψ
$\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}$	5.7	Version of \mathcal{D}_{BS} over \mathbb{Z}'
$\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}, \mathbb{Z}'}^{\text{asph}}$	5.7	Version of $\mathcal{D}^{\text{asph}}$ over \mathbb{Z}'

Section 6

Notation	§	Description
$\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$	6.1	Affine Lie algebra associated with $\mathfrak{gl}_N(\mathbb{C})$
K, d	6.1	Elements in $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$
e_i, h_i, f_i	6.1	Chevalley elements in $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$
ε_i	6.1	Basis of the dual of diagonal matrices in $\mathfrak{gl}_N(\mathbb{C})$
P	6.1	Weight lattice of $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$
α_i	6.1	Simple roots for $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$
nat	6.2	Natural module for $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_N$
m_λ	6.2	Basis of nat
G	6.3	Group $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{k})$
B	6.3	Borel subgroup of lower triangular matrices
T	6.3	Maximal torus of diagonal matrices
χ_i	6.3	Standard basis of $\mathbf{X} = X^*(T)$
ς	6.3	Element in \mathbf{X}
V	6.3	Natural representation of V
E, F	6.3	Functors of tensoring with V and V^*
η, ϵ	6.3	Adjunction morphisms for (E, F)
\mathbb{X}	6.3	Endomorphism of E and F
E_a, F_a	6.3	Generalized eigenspaces of X on E and F
$\text{R}_c(G)$	6.3	Direct factor of $\text{Rep}(G)$ associated with $c \in \mathbf{X}/(W, \bullet)$
ι_n	6.3	Bijection between weights of $\wedge^n \text{nat}$ and $\mathbf{X}/(W, \bullet)$
∂_i	6.4	Demazure operators
\overline{H}_m	6.4	Degenerate affine Hecke algebra
Γ	6.4	Prime ring of the base field, considered as a quiver
$\overline{\mathcal{C}}_\Gamma$	6.4	Category of \overline{H}_m -modules supported on Γ^m
t_{ij}	6.4	Scalars in the definition of the KLR algebra
$H_m(\Gamma)$	6.4	KLR algebra
$H_m(\Gamma) - \text{Mod}_0$	6.4	Category of locally nilpotent modules for $H_m(\Gamma)$
$\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$	6.4	KLR 2-category attached to $\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p$
\mathbb{T}	6.4	Endomorphism of EE
ω	6.4	Weight in P
$\mu_{s_i}, \mu_{s_\infty}$	6.4	Choice of weights for G

Section 7

Notation	§	Description
$\text{Rep}^{[n]}(G)$	7.2	Subcategory of $\text{Rep}(G)$
Y_m	7.3	Subset of P
$\mathcal{U}_+(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$	7.3	Quotient of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_p)$

Section 8

Notation	§	Description
$\mathcal{U}^{[n]}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$	8.1	Quotient of $\mathcal{U}(\widehat{\mathfrak{gl}}_n)$
σ	8.1	Functor from \mathcal{D}_{BS} to endomorphisms of ω

Section 9

Notation	§	Description
A	9.1	Generalized Cartan matrix
$\mathfrak{g}_A, \mathfrak{h}$	9.1	Kac–Moody Lie algebra and Cartan subalgebra
W, S	9.1	Weyl group and simple reflections
$\mathfrak{h}_{\mathbb{Z}}$	9.1	Integral Cartan subalgebra
\mathcal{G}, \mathcal{B}	9.1	Kac–Moody group and Borel subgroup
\mathcal{X}	9.1	Flag variety of \mathcal{G}
\mathcal{X}_w, i_w	9.1	Bruhat cell and inclusion
\mathcal{P}^s	9.1	Parabolic subgroup attached to s
\mathcal{X}^s	9.1	Partial flag variety attached to s
\mathcal{X}_w^s	9.1	Bruhat cell in \mathcal{X}^s
q^s	9.1	Projection $\mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}^s$
\mathbb{K}	9.2	Noetherian commutative ring of finite global dim.
$D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$	9.2	\mathcal{B} -equivariant derived category of \mathcal{X}
$D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$	9.2	\mathcal{B} -equivariant derived category of \mathcal{X}^s
$D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$	9.2	\mathcal{B} -constructible derived category of \mathcal{X}
$D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$	9.2	\mathcal{B} -constructible derived category of \mathcal{X}^s
∇_w, ∇_w^s	9.2	Costandard perverse sheaves on \mathcal{X} and \mathcal{X}^s
Δ_w, Δ_w^s	9.2	Standard perverse sheaves on \mathcal{X} and \mathcal{X}^s
q	9.2	Projection from \mathcal{G} to \mathcal{X}
$\star^{\mathcal{B}}$	9.2	Convolution for $D_{\mathcal{B}}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$ and $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$
$\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$	9.3	Category of \mathcal{B} -equiv. parity complexes on \mathcal{X}
$\text{Parity}_{(\mathcal{B})}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$	9.3	Category of \mathcal{B} -const. parity complexes on \mathcal{X}
$\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$	9.3	Category of \mathcal{B} -equiv. parity complexes on \mathcal{X}^s
$\text{Parity}_{(\mathcal{B})}(\mathcal{X}^s, \mathbb{K})$	9.3	Category of \mathcal{B} -const. parity complexes on \mathcal{X}^s
\mathcal{E}_w	9.3	Bott–Samelson-type parity complex on \mathcal{X}
\mathcal{E}_w	9.3	Indecomposable parity complex on \mathcal{X}
\mathcal{E}_w^s	9.3	Indecomposable parity complex on \mathcal{X}^s
Υ_s	9.7	Functor on $D_{(\mathcal{B})}^b(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{F})$

Section 10

Notation	§	Description
$\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$	10.1	Diagrammatic Hecke category attached to \mathcal{G}
$\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$	10.1	Idempotent completion of $\mathcal{D}_{\text{BS}}^{\mathbb{K}}(\mathcal{G})$
$\text{BS}(\underline{w})$	10.2	Bott–Samelson resolution
π_w	10.2	Morphism from $\text{BS}(\underline{w})$ to \mathcal{X}
$\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{K}}(\underline{w})$	10.2	Canonical Bott–Samelson parity complex on \mathcal{X}
$\text{Parity}_{\mathcal{B}}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{X}, \mathbb{K})$	10.2	Category of Bott–Samelson parity complexes on \mathcal{X}
$\Delta, \Delta_{\text{BS}}$	10.3	Functor from diagrams to parity complexes
B_s^B	10.5	Soergel bimodule over \mathbb{Q}
\mathbb{H}	10.5	Functor from parity complexes to R -bimodules
$\gamma_{\underline{w}, \underline{v}}, \delta_{\underline{w}, \underline{v}}$	10.6	Morphisms induced by the functor Δ_{BS}

Section 11

Notation	§	Description
G^\vee	11.1	Complex group Langlands-dual to G
T^\vee, B^\vee	11.1	Maximal torus and Borel subgroup in G^\vee
G^\wedge	11.1	S.-c. cover of the derived subgroup of G^\vee
T^\wedge, B^\wedge	11.1	Maximal torus and Borel subgroup in G^\wedge
\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{O}	11.1	Laurent series and power series over \mathbb{C}
I^\vee, I^\wedge	11.1	Iwahori subgroups for G^\vee and G^\wedge
$\mathcal{Fl}^\vee, \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge$	11.1	Affine flag variety for G^\vee and G^\wedge
\mathcal{Fl}_w^\wedge	11.1	Bruhat cell in \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge
$D_{I^\wedge}^b(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$	11.1	I^\wedge -constructible derived category of \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge
\star_{I^\wedge}	11.1	Convolution bifunctor
$\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}^{\text{BS}}(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$	11.1	I^\wedge -equ. Bott–Samelson parity compl. on \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge
$\text{Parity}_{I^\wedge}(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$	11.1	I^\wedge -equ. parity complexes on \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge
ψ	11.2	Nontrivial character of the prime subfield of \mathbb{F}
\mathcal{L}_ψ	11.2	Artin–Schreier local system attached to ψ
I_\circ^\wedge	11.2	Opposite Iwahori subgroup for G^\wedge
χ	11.2	Character of I_\circ^\wedge
$D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$	11.2	Iwahori–Whittaker derived category of \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge
$\mathcal{Fl}_{w, \circ}^\wedge, i_{w, \circ}$	11.2	Opposite Bruhat cell in \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge and inclusion
Δ_w^χ	11.2	Standard perverse sheaf in $D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$
∇_w^χ	11.2	Costandard perverse sheaf in $D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$
Av_χ	11.2	Averaging functor
$\mathcal{Fl}^{s, \wedge}$	11.2	Parabolic affine flag variety attached to s
$D_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}^b(\mathcal{Fl}^{s, \wedge}, \mathbb{K})$	11.2	Iwahori–Whittaker derived category of $\mathcal{Fl}^{s, \wedge}$
$\text{Parity}_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}(\mathcal{Fl}^\wedge, \mathbb{K})$	11.3	Iwahori–Whittaker parity complexes on \mathcal{Fl}^\wedge
$\text{Parity}_{(I_\circ^\wedge, \chi)}(\mathcal{Fl}^{s, \wedge}, \mathbb{K})$	11.3	Iwahori–Whittaker parity complexes on $\mathcal{Fl}^{s, \wedge}$

REFERENCES

- [AR1] P. Achar, S. Riche, *Modular perverse sheaves on flag varieties I: tilting and parity sheaves* (with a joint appendix with G. Williamson), preprint arXiv:1401.7245, to appear in Ann. Sci. Éc. Norm. Supér.
- [AR2] P. Achar, S. Riche, *Modular perverse sheaves on flag varieties II: Koszul duality and formality*, preprint arXiv:1401.7256, to appear in Duke Math. J.
- [AR3] P. Achar, S. Riche, *Modular perverse sheaves on flag varieties III: positivity conditions*, preprint arXiv:1408.4189.
- [AR4] P. Achar, S. Riche, *Reductive groups, the loop Grassmannian, and the Springer resolution*, in preparation.
- [A1] H. H. Andersen, *Tilting modules for algebraic groups*, in *Algebraic groups and their representations* (Cambridge, 1997), 25–42, NATO Adv. Sci. Inst. Ser. C Math. Phys. Sci., 517, Kluwer Acad. Publ., Dordrecht, 1998.
- [A2] H. H. Andersen, *A sum formula for tilting filtrations*, in *Commutative algebra, homological algebra and representation theory* (Catania/Genoa/Rome, 1998), J. Pure Appl. Algebra **152** (2000), 17–40.
- [AJS] H. H. Andersen, J. C. Jantzen, W. Soergel, *Representations of quantum groups at a p -th root of unity and of semisimple groups in characteristic p : independence of p* , Astérisque **220** (1994), 1–321.
- [AK] H. H. Andersen, M. Kaneda, *Rigidity of tilting modules*, Mosc. Math. J. **11** (2011), 1–39, 181.
- [AST] H. H. Andersen, C. Stroppel, D. Tubbenhauer, *Cellular structures using U_q -tilting modules*, preprint arXiv:1503.00224.
- [AT] H. H. Andersen, D. Tubbenhauer, *Diagram categories for U_q -tilting modules at roots of unity*, preprint arXiv:1409.2799 (2014), to appear in *Transformation groups*.
- [AB] S. Arkhipov, R. Bezrukavnikov, *Perverse sheaves on affine flags and Langlands dual group*, with an appendix by R. Bezrukavnikov and I. Mirković, Israel J. Math **170** (2009), 135–183.
- [ABG] S. Arkhipov, R. Bezrukavnikov, V. Ginzburg, *Quantum groups, the loop Grassmannian, and the Springer resolution*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **17** (2004), 595–678.
- [BBD] A. Beilinson, J. Bernstein, P. Deligne, *Faisceaux pervers*, Analysis and topology on singular spaces, I (Luminy, 1981), 5171, Astérisque, **100**, Soc. Math. France, Paris, 1982.
- [BBM] A. Beilinson, R. Bezrukavnikov, I. Mirković, *Tilting exercises*, Mosc. Math. J. **4** (2004), no. 3, 547557, 782.
- [BGS] A. Beilinson, V. Ginzburg, W. Soergel, *Koszul duality patterns in representation theory*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **9** (1996), 473–527.
- [B1] R. Bezrukavnikov, *Quasi-exceptional sets and equivariant coherent sheaves on the nilpotent cone*, Represent. Theory **7** (2003), 1–18.
- [B2] R. Bezrukavnikov, *Cohomology of tilting modules over quantum groups and t -structures on derived categories of coherent sheaves*, Invent. Math. **166** (2006), 327–357.
- [BY] R. Bezrukavnikov, Z. Yun, *On Koszul duality for Kac–Moody groups*, Represent. Theory **17** (2013), 1–98.
- [Br] J. Brundan, *On the definition of Kac–Moody 2-category*, preprint arXiv:1501.00350 (2015).
- [BK] J. Brundan and A. Kleshchev, *Blocks of cyclotomic Hecke algebras and Khovanov–Lauda algebras*, Invent. Math. **178** (2009), 451–484.
- [BM] A. Buch, L. Mihalcea, *Curve neighborhoods of Schubert varieties*, J. Differential Geom. **99** (2015), 255–283.
- [CR] J. Chuang and R. Rouquier, *Derived equivalences for symmetric groups and \mathfrak{sl}_2 -categorification*, Ann. of Math. **167** (2008), 245–298.
- [CPS] E. Cline, B. Parshall, L. Scott, *Finite-dimensional algebras and highest weight categories*, J. Reine Angew. Math. **391** (1988), 85–99.
- [Do] S. Donkin, *On tilting modules for algebraic groups*, Math. Z. **212** (1993), 39–60.
- [El] B. Elias, *The two-color Soergel calculus*, preprint arXiv:1308.661.
- [EK] B. Elias, M. Khovanov, *Diagrammatics for Soergel categories*, Int. J. Math. Math. Sci. **2010**, Art. ID 978635, 58 pp.

- [EW1] B. Elias, G. Williamson, *The Hodge theory of Soergel bimodules*, Ann. of Math. **180** (2014), 1089–1136.
- [EW2] B. Elias, G. Williamson, *Soergel calculus*, preprint arXiv:1309.0865.
- [Er] K. Erdmann, *Tensor products and dimensions of simple modules for symmetric groups*, Manuscripta Math. **88** (1995), 357–386.
- [F1] P. Fiebig, *Lusztig’s conjecture as a moment graph problem*, Bull. Lond. Math. Soc. **42** (2010), 957–972.
- [F2] P. Fiebig, *An upper bound on the exceptional characteristics for Lusztig’s character formula*, J. Reine Angew. Math. **673** (2012), 1–31.
- [FM] M. Finkelberg, I. Mirković, *Semi-infinite flags I. Case of global curve \mathbb{P}^1* , in *Differential topology, infinite-dimensional Lie algebras, and applications*, Amer. Math. Soc., 1999, pp. 81–112.
- [GG] R. Gordon, E. Green, *Graded Artin algebras*, J. Algebra **76** (1982), 111–137.
- [Ha] M. Härterich, *Kazhdan–Lusztig-Basen, unzerlegbare Bimoduln und die Topologie der Fahnemannigfaltigkeit einer Kac–Moody-Gruppe*, PhD thesis, Freiburg University, available at <https://www.freidok.uni-freiburg.de/data/18>.
- [Ja] J. C. Jantzen, *Representations of algebraic groups, second edition*, Mathematical surveys and monographs 107, Amer. Math. Soc., 2003.
- [JW] L. T. Jensen, G. Williamson, *The p -canonical basis for Hecke algebras*, preprint arXiv:1510.01556.
- [JMW] D. Juteau, C. Mautner, G. Williamson, *Parity sheaves*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **27** (2014), 1169–1212.
- [KS] M. Kashiwara, P. Schapira, *Categories and sheaves*, Grundlehren der Mathematischen Wissenschaften, **332**. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 2006.
- [KT] M. Kashiwara, T. Tanisaki, *Kazhdan–Lusztig conjecture for affine Lie algebras with negative level I*, Duke Math. J. **77** (1995), 21–62; *II, non-integral case*, Duke Math. J. **84** (1996), 771–813.
- [KL] D. Kazhdan, G. Lusztig, *Tensor structures arising from affine Lie algebras I*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **6** (1993), 905–947; *II*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **6** (1993), 949–1011; *III*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **7** (1994), 335–381; *IV*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **7** (1994), 383–453.
- [Ku] S. Kumar, *Kac–Moody groups, their flag varieties and representation theory*, Progress in Mathematics 204, Birkhäuser, Boston, 2002.
- [Li] N. Libedinsky, *Sur la catégorie des bimodules de Soergel*, J. Algebra **320** (2008), 2675–2694.
- [L1] G. Lusztig, *Some problems in the representation theory of finite Chevalley groups*, in *The Santa Cruz Conference on Finite Groups*, pp. 313–317, Proc. Sympos. Pure Math. 37, Amer. Math. Soc., 1980.
- [L2] G. Lusztig, *Modular representations and quantum groups*, in *Classical groups and related topics (Beijing, 1987)*, 59–77, Contemp. Math. 82, Amer. Math. Soc., 1989.
- [L3] G. Lusztig, *Monodromic systems on affine flag manifolds*, Proc. Roy. Soc. London **445** (1994), 231–246. Errata in **450** (1995), 731–732.
- [LW] G. Lusztig, G. Williamson, *On the character of certain tilting modules*, preprint arXiv:1502.04904.
- [Ma] R. Maksimau, *Algèbres KLR et algèbres de carquois-Schur*, Ph.D. thesis, Université Paris Diderot-Paris 7, 2015.
- [MSV] M. Mackaay, M. Stošić, P. Vaz, *A diagrammatic categorification of the q -Schur algebra*, Quantum Topol. **4** (2013), 1–75.
- [MT1] M. Mackaay, A.-L. Thiel, *Categorifications of the extended affine Hecke algebra and the affine q -Schur algebra $\hat{\mathbf{S}}(n, r)$ for $2 < r < n$* , preprint arXiv:1302.3102.
- [MT2] M. Mackaay, A.-L. Thiel, *A diagrammatic categorification of the affine q -Schur algebra $\hat{\mathbf{S}}(n, n)$ for $n \geq 3$* , Pacific J. Math. **278** (2015), 201–233.
- [M1] O. Mathieu, *Construction d’un groupe de Kac–Moody et applications*, Compositio Math. **69** (1989), 37–60.
- [M2] O. Mathieu, *On the dimension of some modular irreducible representations of the symmetric group*, Lett. Math. Phys. **38** (1996), 23–32.
- [MR] C. Mautner and S. Riche, *Exotic tilting sheaves, parity sheaves on affine Grassmannians, and the Mirković–Vilonen conjecture*, preprint arXiv:1501.07369.
- [Na] D. Nadler, *Perverse sheaves on real loop Grassmannians*, Invent. Math. **159** (2005), 1–73.

- [Ro] R. Rouquier, *2-Kac-Moody algebras*, preprint arXiv:0812.5023 (2008).
- [S1] W. Soergel, *Gradings on representation categories*, in *Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematicians, Vol. 1, 2* (Zürich, 1994), 800–806, Birkhäuser, 1995.
- [S2] W. Soergel, *Kazhdan-Lusztig polynomials and a combinatoric[s] for tilting modules*, Represent. Theory **1** (1997), 83–114.
- [S3] W. Soergel, *Character formulas for tilting modules over Kac-Moody algebras*, Represent. Theory **2** (1998), 432–448.
- [S4] W. Soergel, *On the relation between intersection cohomology and representation theory in positive characteristic*, in *Commutative algebra, homological algebra and representation theory (Catania/Genoa/Rome, 1998)*, J. Pure Appl. Algebra **152** (2000), 311–335.
- [S5] W. Soergel, *Langlands' philosophy and Koszul duality*, in *Algebra—representation theory (Constanta, 2000)*, 379–414, NATO Sci. Ser. II Math. Phys. Chem. 28, Kluwer, Dordrecht, 2001.
- [S6] W. Soergel, *Kazhdan-Lusztig-Polynome und unzerlegbare Bimoduln über Polynomringen*, J. Inst. Math. Jussieu **6** (2007), 501–525.
- [Sp] T. A. Springer, *Quelques applications de la cohomologie d'intersection*, Bourbaki Seminar, Vol. 1981/1982, pp. 249–273, Astérisque **92–93**, Soc. Math. France, Paris, 1982.
- [Wi] G. Williamson, *Schubert calculus and torsion explosion*, with an appendix joint with A. Kontorovich and P. J. McNamara, preprint arXiv:1309.5055.

CLERMONT UNIVERSITÉ, UNIVERSITÉ BLAISE PASCAL, LABORATOIRE DE MATHÉMATIQUES, BP 10448, F-63000 CLERMONT-FERRAND.

CNRS, UMR 6620, LABORATOIRE DE MATHÉMATIQUES, F-63177 AUBIÈRE.

E-mail address: `simon.riche@math.univ-bpclermont.fr`

MAX-PLANCK-INSTITUT FÜR MATHEMATIK, VIVATSGASSE 7, 53111, BONN, GERMANY.

E-mail address: `geordie@mpim-bonn.mpg.de`